

AL-BAHER CONNECT

الصف الخامس الابتدائي - الفصل الدراسي الأول

2023



First Term

5th.
Primary

LET'S REMEMBER

Social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي



Transportation وسائل النقل



Environment البيئة



Let's remember

Definitions تعريفات

drought	when there isn't enough water
flood	when there is too much water
password	the special code you need to access your computer
traffic	lots of cars on the road
tram	public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train
taxi	a car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives
pollution	when there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air
text message	a small note you write to someone on your cell phone

Look and write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences.
انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Your favorite transportation



Help your child identify these definitions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.

Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form:

التكوين

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، وله شكلان:

① أفعال منتظمة (Regular verbs) وتتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل.

like	يحب	→	liked	play	يلعب	→	played
walk	يمشي	→	walked	study	يذاكر	→	studied

② أفعال غير منتظمة (Irregular verbs).

is	يكون	→	was	have	يملك	→	had
swim	يسبح	→	swam	do	يفعل	→	did
see	يرى	→	saw	go	يذهب	→	went

Usage:

الاستخدام:

للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- e.g. - I **went** to the park last Friday.
- They **played** football yesterday.

Key words:

الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month, ...)
ago	منذ	(الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي

- e.g. - We **played** tennis yesterday.
- He **went** to the zoo **last week**.

Modals

الأفعال الناقصة

can + inf. يستطيع

للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء ما في المضارع.

e.g. I **can** swim.

can't + inf. لا يستطيع

للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء ما في المضارع.

e.g. I **can't** ride a bike.

should + inf. ينبغي أن

للتعبير بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. You **should** get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.

shouldn't + inf. لا ينبغي أن

للتعبير بعدم فعل شيء ما.

e.g. Wael **shouldn't** give his password to his friends.

must + inf. يجب أن

للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما.

e.g. We **must** plant more trees to get fresher air.

mustn't + inf. لا يجب أن

للتعبير عن المنع والتحريم.

e.g. You **mustn't** pollute water.

need to + inf. يحتاج أن

للتعبير عن الضرورة.

e.g. You **need to** look right and left before you cross the road.



Writing

When we write a paragraph, we use some phrases such as:
عندما نكتب فقرة نستخدم بعض العبارات مثل:

Many people think ...	يعتقد كثير من الناس ...
They also say ...	يقولون أيضًا ...
As well as this, ...	بالإضافة إلى هذا, ...
But, on the other hand, ...	ولكن, من ناحية أخرى, ...
In general, ...	عمومًا, ...
My opinion is ...	رأيني ...

You are buying a tablet with your parents.
Write about the pros and cons of using the tablet.
Use the following phrases.

Pros

small and light

صغير وخفيف

can read books on it

يمكن قراءة الكتب عليه

it looks cool

يبدو جميلًا

Cons

can't write word files

لا يمكن كتابة ملفات الورد

the camera isn't very good

الكاميرا ليست جيدة جدًا

small screen

شاشة صغيرة

Model paragraph

Many people think that the tablet is small and light. They also say they can read books on it. But, on the other hand, they can't write word files. As well as this, the camera isn't very good. My opinion is that it looks cool, but it has a small screen. In general, it is helpful and useful.



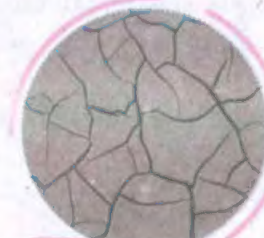
Activities

1 Look and complete.

انظر وأكمل.



t_x_



dr__ght



m_t_o



b__t



pa__word



c_ll p_one



t__m



tr_ff_c

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- They (go - went - going) to the cinema yesterday.
- The movie (am - are - was) very good.
- We (must - mustn't - can't) plant more trees.
- You (need - should - shouldn't) put on a jacket. It's cold.
- Can you swim? No, I (can - can't - mustn't).
- I (study - studied - studies) English yesterday.
- Last night, we (have - has - had) a party.
- You (must - can - mustn't) put on your seat belt.
- Dina (is - can't - needs) swim in the sea.
- You (need - must - can) to drink a lot of water.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and match :

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1 drought | a) when there is too much water |
| 2 traffic | b) when there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air |
| 3 flood | c) when there isn't enough water |
| 4 pollution | d) lots of cars on the road |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Maged and Lama are brother and sister. They had a nice weekend. They played football together in the park on Friday morning. Then Lama helped her mom to clean the house. And Maged walked with his dad to the supermarket. On Friday evening, Lama went to the cinema with her friend's family and they saw a movie. It was very good. Maged went to the beach along the coast path and swam in the sea with his dad. The following day, they went to the zoo together. They saw lots of interesting animals. In the evening Maged studied for a test and Lama did her homework. It was a lovely weekend!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 (Maged - Lama - Dad) helped mom to clean the house.
2 It was a (happy - bad - sad) weekend.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where did they play football?
.....
4 Who did Lama go to the cinema with?
.....

اقرأ واصل.



Theme (1) I discover myself



Unit (1)

We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا



In this unit, the student will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
 في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ... يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة. يفهم السلاسل الغذائية. يستمع إلى محادثة عن الطعام المفضل. يتدرب على تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام (ماذا عن) يقرأ قصة خرافية. يتدرب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة. يفهم الكسور العشرية. يكتب وصفة (طهي). يبحث ويقوم بعمل ملصق عن الفاكهة والخضراوات التي تزرع في مصر.
- understand food chains.
- listen to a conversation about favorite food.
- practice making suggestions with *how about*.
- read a fairy tale.
- practice saying vowel sounds.
- understand decimal fractions.
- write a recipe.
- research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.

Lesson (1)

FOOD AND DRINK

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



onions
بصل



limes
ليمون أخضر حامض



beans
فول



pineapples
أناناس



carrots
جزر



coconuts
جوز الهند



eggs
بيض



mango
مانجو



chocolate
شوكولاته



lemons
ليمون



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

healthy	محي	mangoes	مانجو	garden	حديقة
unhealthy	غير محي	easy	سهل	potatoes	بطاطس
chickens	دجاج	fresh	طازج		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
love	يحب	loved	collected
		collect	يجمع

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	ate
have / has	يملك	had	sold
buy	يشترى	bought	grew
		grow	يزرع / ينمو

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a lot	كثير - كثيرًا	a little	قليل - قليلًا
, is it?	أليس كذلك؟	at the market	في السوق
in the garden	في الحديقة	That's easy!	هذا سهل!
But my favorite ...	لكن المفضل لدي ...		
I love chocolate too.	أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا.		

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

Dina : What's your favorite food, Farida?

ما هو طعامك المفضل، يا فريدا؟

Farida : That's easy! It's chocolate.

هذا سهل! إنها الشوكولاتة.

Dina : Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

مممم... أنا أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟

Farida : I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

أعتقد أنه لا بأس إذا أكلت قليلًا. ولكن نعم، إنها ليست صحية إذا أكلت الكثير منها.

Dina : What's your favorite healthy food?

ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل؟

Farida : Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج وأحب السمك. لكنني أفضل المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.

Dina : I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا، ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون أخضر حامض وشجرة ليمون.

Farida : My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس ولديه دجاج أيضًا، ويجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم وأحيانًا يبيعه في السوق.

Did you know ?

Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

لا ينمو الأناناس على الشجر! إنه ينمو على الأرض.



Use. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

nd fish.

ee in her garden.

th words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

chicken - a little

1)..... food, Farida?

2).....

oo. But it isn't healthy, is it?

3)..... What about you?

4).....

Lesson 1

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

4 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 I love chocolate (to - too - two).
- 2 Chocolate is (healthy - unhealthy - easy).
- 3 We have a (mango - egg - fish) tree in the garden.
- 4 (Goats - Chickens - Cats) give us eggs.
- 5 My uncle sells eggs at the (school - market - hospital).
- 6 My favorite (food - drink - color) is chicken.
- 7 Eating a lot of fruit is (unhealthy - healthy - bad).

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 food - What's - favorite - your - ?
.....
- 2 a mango - garden - He - in - the - tree - has - .
.....
- 3 in - We - garden - our - mangoes - grow - .
.....

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



lentils

عدس



peanuts

فول سوداني



seeds

بذور



digestive system

الجهاز الهضمي



koshari

كشري



soup

حساء - شوربة



chickpeas

حمص



molokhia

ملوخية



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

ingredients	مكونات - مقادير	important	مهم	group	مجموعة
hummus	سلطة حمص بالطحينة	fruit	فاكهة	market	سوق
harvest	يحمّد - حصاد	vegetables	خضروات	delicious	لذيذ
properly	بطريقة سليمة	regularly	بانتظام	local	محلي
legumes	البقوليات	farm	مزرعة	fork	شوكة
recipe	وصفة طعام	plant	نبات	row	صف



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
help	يساعد	helped	took
belong	ينتمي - يخص	belonged	put
work	يعمل	worked	kept
water	يسقي	watered	bought
		buy	يشترى



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

belong to	ينتمي إلى	work properly	يعمل بشكل سليم
look green	يبدو لونها أخضر	look healthy	تبدو صحية
plant in rows	يزرع في صفوف	turn brown	يتحول إلى اللون البني

Note:

We grow molokhia in our garden.

We make it into soup.

نزرع الملوخية في حديقتنا. نصنع منها الشوربة / حساء.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

food chain	سلسلة الغذاء	ecosystem	النظام البيئي
primary consumer	مستهلك أولي	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
secondary consumer	مستهلك ثانوي	energy	طاقة
tertiary consumer	مستهلك ثالث	ground	أرض
producers	كائنات منتجة	insects	حشرات
decomposers	كائنات محللة	large	كبير

Producers	المنتجون	→	plants & trees	نباتات وأشجار
Consumers	المستهلكون	→	animals	حيوانات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
provide	يزود - يمد	provided
give	يعطي	gave
get	يحصل على	got
see	يرى	saw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

provide for	يوفر لـ
is called	يسمى
at the start of	في بداية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



The sun provides **energy** for plants to grow. توفر الشمس الطاقة للنباتات لكي تنمو.

Plants and trees are called **producers**. نباتات والأشجار تسمى كائنات منتجة.

Animals are called **consumers**. الحيوانات تسمى كائنات مستهلكة.

Primary consumers eat plants. يأكل المستهلكون في المستوى الأول النباتات.

Secondary consumers eat small animals and insects. يأكل المستهلكون في المستوى الثاني الحيوانات الصغيرة والحشرات.

Tertiary consumers eat larger animals. يأكل المستهلكون في المستوى الثالث الحيوانات الأكبر.

Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem. تقوم الكائنات المحللة بإعادة العناصر الغذائية للنظام البيئي مرة أخرى.

This is called a 'food chain'. It shows how plants and animals get their **energy**. At the start of the chain, we can see **plants**. These are called **producers**. They get energy from the **sun**. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. **Animals** eat plants or other animals for energy.

هذه تسمى "سلسلة الغذاء". وهي توضح كيفية حصول النباتات والحيوانات على الطاقة. في بداية السلسلة، يمكن أن نرى النباتات. وهذه تسمى الكائنات المنتجة. ويحصلون على الطاقة من الشمس. لا تحصل الحيوانات على الطاقة من الشمس. تأكل الحيوانات النباتات والحيوانات الأخرى للحصول على الطاقة.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Animals are called consumers.
- 2 Plants are called producers.
- 3 Plants get their energy from the sun.
- 4 Animals get their energy from the ground.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

healthy - ingredient - chickpeas - legumes

Ashraf grows (1) Chickpeas are an important (2) in many recipes such as koshari and hummus. They belong to a group of foods called (3) Chickpeas are a (4) food.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1 Chickpeas belong to | a energy for plants to grow. |
| 2 Chickpeas are an | b called producers. |
| 3 The sun provides | c legumes. |
| 4 Plants and trees are | d called consumers. |
| 5 Animals are | e important ingredient in many recipes. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- () 5- ()

4 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 Chickpeas are an important (ingredient - water - wood) in many recipes.
- 2 Chickpeas belong to (fruits - vegetables - legumes).
- 3 Chickpeas are a (bad - healthy - unhealthy) food.
- 4 We harvest the chickpeas when they are (green - brown - blue).
- 5 The sun provides (energy - oil - water) for plants to grow.
- 6 Plants and trees are called (producers - consumers - eaters).
- 7 Plants get their energy from the (moon - soil - sun).
- 8 Animals are called (producers - consumers - makers).
- 9 Animals get their energy by eating (plants - fish - sand).
- 10 Secondary consumers eat (small - big - large) animals and insects.

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 energy - get - their - Plants - sun - from - the - .2 Animals - consumers - called - are - .3 consumers - plants - Primary - eat - .4 belong - legumes - to - Chickpeas - .5 a - healthy - are - Chickpeas - food - .

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Food chain shows how plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. These are called producers. They get energy from the sun. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Plants get energy from the (earth - sun - sky).
- 2 Plants are called (producers - consumers - eaters).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What does food chain show?
- 4 Do animal get their energy from the sun?

7 Look and write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Chickpeas

Guiding words:

(important - koshari - healthy - legumes- delicious)



Lesson (3 / A)

MY SHOPPING LIST

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع و اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Narrator: 1

Market trader : Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! *(How much)* buying some lovely red tomatoes?

طعام جميلة تعال واشترى ماذا عن شراء بعض من الطماطم الحمراء الجميلة؟

Mom : Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. *(How much)* are they?

أوه أعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى بعض الطماطم. كم سعرها؟

Market trader : They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

سعرها جيد: فقط ثلاث جنيهات للكيلو الواحد.

Mom : OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.

Market trader : How about buying some carrots too?

Mom : No, thank you.

Ibrahim : Mom, please *(How much)* a pineapple?

أمي، من فضلك، كم سعرها؟

Mom : Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! *(How much)* a nice juicy pineapple.

أوه نعم، إبراهيم! كم سعرها؟

Market trader : There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

بالفضول. سيكون إجمالي ذلك عشرين جنيهًا. من فضلك.

Help your child listen, read and role-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.

Lesson (3)

الراوي: ٢

Narrator: 2

Nada : I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

أنا حقًا أحب القدوم إلى منزلك. يا جدي.

Grandma : I like it when you visit me, Nada.

وأنا أحب زيارتك لي، يا ندا.

Nada : We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

نحن لم نحصل على شجرة مانجو في حديقة المنزل لدينا. لدينا شجرة ليمون.

Grandma : I know. I'm lucky to have one. *(Would you like to have a mango now?)*

أنا أعرف. أنا سعيدة لأنني حصلت على واحدة. هل ترغب في الحصول على مانجو الآن؟

Nada : Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. *(Have you got any coconut?)*

نعم، من فضلك! أريد أيضًا الحصول على مانجو ومانجو مالابيا لاحقًا. هل لديك جوز الهند؟

Grandma : Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.

نعم، اشتريت بعضها في السوق هذا الصباح.

Narrator: 3

الراوي: ٣

Mom 2 : Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?

يا أشرف، هل تأتي معي إلى السوق؟

Ashraf : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?

نعم، بالطبع. ما الذي نحتاج أن نشتريه؟

Mom 2 : We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.

نحن بحاجة إلى شراء خبز وأرز. ماذا تريد أن تأكل في يوم السبت؟

Ashraf : Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!

أوه، أريد كوشاري، من فضلك. إنها المفضلة لدي!

Mom 2 : OK, are there any onions in the fridge?

حسنًا، هل هناك بصل في الثلاجة؟

Ashraf : No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

لا، لا يوجد بصل. لذا، نحتاج أن نشتري خبز، أرز، وبصل.

Help your child listen, read and role-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.

Countable & Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

Countable nouns

الأسماء التي تعد

هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع.

- a banana → bananas - an egg → eggs

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي لا تعد

هي الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع ولا يمكن عدّها.

- rice - chocolate - bread

A / An

- We use **a** with singular countable nouns that begin with a consonant.

نستخدم (a) مع الأسماء المعدودة المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

- a mango - a pineapple - a banana

e.g. I would like a banana, please.

- We use **an** with singular countable nouns that begin with a vowel.

نستخدم (an) مع الأسماء المعدودة المفردة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

- an onion - an egg - an orange

e.g. I would like an orange, please.

Help your child identify countable & uncountable nouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.

Narrator: A

Dad : OK, what do we need to get, Amal? حسناً، ما الذي نحتاج أن نشتريه يا أمال؟

Amal : Mom says three lemons and some eggs.

أمي تقول ثلاث ليمونات وبعض البيض.

Dad : Here are the lemons.

ها هو الليمون

Amal : The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!

البيض هناك أوه والشوكولاته أيضاً!

Dad : Is it on Mom's list?

هل هي في قائمة الأم؟

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

لا، ليست موجودة. ولكن هل يمكنني الحصول على البعض، من فضلك؟

Dad : OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal!

حسناً، ولكن لا تأكلها إلا بعد العشاء، يا أمال!

Making suggestions

عمل الاقتراحات

عند تقديم اقتراح نستخدم:

How about + v-ing? وماذا عن...؟

e.g. How about buying some lemons?

Let's + inf. هيا بنا.....

e.g. Let's buy a nice pineapple.

Reply الرد

- Good idea!

OK.

عند قبول الاقتراح نقول:

فكرة جيدة

حسناً.

عند رفض الاقتراح نقول:

لا، شكراً لك.

No, thank you.

Help your child learn how to make suggestions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يقدم الاقتراحات.

some & any

some

We use **(some)** with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in affirmative sentences.

نستخدم **(some)** مع الأسماء الجمع المحدودة والأسماء التي لا تُعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. I'd like **some** apples, please.

I'd like **some** rice, please.

any

We use **(any)** with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.

نستخدم **(any)** مع الأسماء الجمع المحدودة ومع الأسماء التي لا تُعد في الأسئلة والجمل المنفية.

e.g. Are there **any** tomatoes?

We haven't got **any** milk.

Note:

We use **(some)** in request and offer questions.

نستخدم **(some)** في سؤال الطلب والعرض.

e.g. Can I have **some** grapes?

(Request)

Would you like **some** chocolate?

(Offer)

انظر واقرأ.

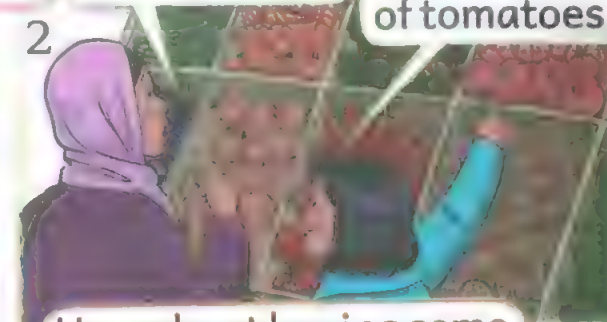
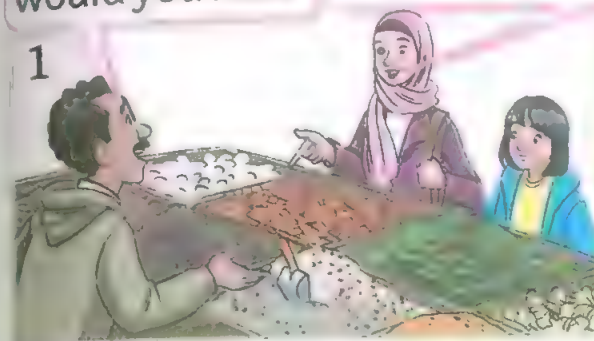
Look and read.

1 Hello, what would you like?

I would like some carrots, please.

2 Are there any tomatoes?

Yes, look! There are lots of tomatoes.



3 Would you like an orange?



Yes, please. Can I have some grapes too?

4 How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too?



No, thanks. That's all I need for now.

Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 I'd like (a - an - some) apple, please.
- 2 How about (eat - eats - eating) mangoes?
- 3 Would you like (a - some - any) carrots?
- 4 We don't have (some - any - a) onions.
- 5 Can I have (a - an - some) banana, please?
- 6 Are there (some - a - any) apples?
- 7 I'd like some (grape - grapes - onion).
- 8 We have (a - any - some) chickens for lunch.

Help your child look, read and practise the dialog.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ ويمارس الحوار.

Help your child use (a, an, some and any with nouns).

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (a, an, some and any) مع الأسماء.

Healthy & Unhealthy

Foods

shawerma	شاورما	burger	ساندوتش برجر
boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	french fries	بطاطس مقلية
yogurt	زبادي	pizza	بيتزا
koshari	كشري	honey	عسل

Dessert

الحلو

Om Ali	أم علي	cookies	كوكيز
nuts	مكسرات	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه

Meals

الوجبات

breakfast	الإفطار	dinner	العشاء
lunch	الغداء		

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

cupboard	دولاب - خزانة	unpack	يفك
delicious	لذيذ	healthy	صحي
diet	رجيم (نظام غذائي)	unhealthy	غير صحي
diary	مفكرة	bowl	وعاء - سلطانية

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع و اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Mom : Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

جلى، هل يمكنك مساعدتى في تفريغ الحقائب من فضلك؟

Jana : Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

نعم بالطبع. أوه، جيد، أنت اشتريت مانجو من السوق. أنا أحب المانجو. أوه، واشتريت شوكولاتة. لذيذ!

Mom : Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays - it isn't very healthy.

ضعى ذلك في الخزانة من فضلك. إنه للتحلية غداً. نحن فقط نتناول الشوكولاتة أيام السبت - إنها ليست صحية جداً.

Jana : OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

حسناً، أين أضع الكعك المحلى؟

Mom : Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one - they aren't very healthy!

من فضلك ضعها في الخزانة العلوية. يمكنك تناول واحدة بعد المدرسة غداً - ولكن واحدة فقط - فهي ليست صحية جداً.

Jana : OK, I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

حسناً، سأضع الموز في وعاء الفاكهة على الطاولة.

Mom : Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

شكراً لك. هل الدجاج في الثلاجة؟ إنه من أجل الشاورما على الغداء اليوم.

Jana : Yes, it's there with the carrots.

نعم، إنه موجود مع الجزر.

Mom : Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

شكراً لك، يا جلى. هل تريدن "أم علي" للتحلية الليلة؟ اشتريت كيساً من المكسرات.

Jana : Yes, please, Mom! That's my favourite!

نعم، من فضلك، يا أمى! إنها المفضلة لى!

Read the food diaries. From 1 (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest).

اقرأ يوميات الطعام من ١ (الأكثر صحة) إلى ٣ (الأقل صحة).

- 1 **Breakfast:** cheese and bread, cucumber, jam
Lunch: chicken, french fries, rice
Dinner: yogurt and honey, cake

- 2 **Breakfast:** ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice
Lunch: koshari, salad, an orange
Dinner: yogurt, fruit salad

- 3 **Breakfast:** 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese
Lunch: burger and french fries
Dinner: pizza



Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

تأكد أنك تتناول وجبة غذائية متوازنة لكي يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي تحتاجها.



Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

some - what - buying - please

Market trader : Hello,(1)..... would you like?

Omar : I would like(2)..... potatoes, please.

Market trader : Would you like some grapes?

Omar : Yes,(3).....

Market trader : How about(4)..... some apples?

Omar : No, thanks. That's all I need.

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1 How about (buy - buying - buys) some tomatoes?

2 Can we have (a - an - some) pineapple?

3 There are (any - some - a) carrots on the table.

4 (Will - Can - Would) you like a mango?

5 I don't have (a - any - some) french fries.

6 Are there (some - a - any) apples?

7 I'd like (a - an - some) orange.

8 Would you like (a - any - an) carrot?

9 I'd like some (grape - grapes - onion).

10 We don't have (a - any - some) pineapples.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- 1 What would you like? a Yes, please.
 2 How about buying some carrots? b I'd like some lemons, please.
 3 Are there any apples? c No, thanks. I don't need carrots.
 4 Would you like an orange? d Yes, there are some.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 got - We - grapes - any - haven't - .
 2 about - pineapples - How - buying - some - ?
 3 you - What - would - like - ?

- 4 I - Can - apple, - have - please - an - ?

5 Read and complete.

اقرأ وأكمل.

lunch - mango - chocolate - How

- 1 Nada wants _____ for dessert.
 2 He doesn't have a _____ tree in his garden.
 3 _____ about buying some apples?
 4 We have chicken and rice for _____.

Lesson (4)

JACK AND THE BEANSTALK



Key Vocabulary

beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	castle	قلعة
giant	عملاق	chop	يقطع
grab	يحدث / يفتزع	cage	قفس



Extra Vocabulary

poor	فقير	special	خاص / مميز	clouds	سحب
rich	غني	happily	بسعادة	coins	عملات معدنية
angry	غاضب	free	حر	price	سعر
hungry	جوعان	top	قمة	axe	بألة / فأس



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

Present

Past

Present

Past

climb	يتسلق	climbed	يقابل	meet	met
count	يعد	counted	يصنع	make	made
talk	يتكلم	talked	يقول	say	said
save	ينقذ	saved	يرمي / يقذف	throw	threw
reach	يصل	reached	يرى	see	saw
stay	يقيم	stayed	يذهب	go	went
cry	يخذي / يبكي	cried	يقع / يسقط	fall	fell
grab	يحدث / يفتزع	grabbed	يهرب	run away	ran away

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions

on the way to

على الطريق إلى

a magic hen

دجاجة سحرية

go up

يرتفع إلى

a kind boy

ولد لطيف

a golden egg

بيضة ذهبية

at last

أخيراً - في النهاية

as soon as

بمجرد أن

next to

جوار



Definitions

تعريفات

giant

a very, very big person

grab

to pick something up quickly

castle

a very large building built a long time ago

chop

to cut something down

cage

a box in which we keep animals

Listen and read.

1



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

الأم لجاك " اذهب إلى السوق وقم ببيع آخر بقرة لدينا. من فضلك بعها بسعر جيد، يا جاك!"

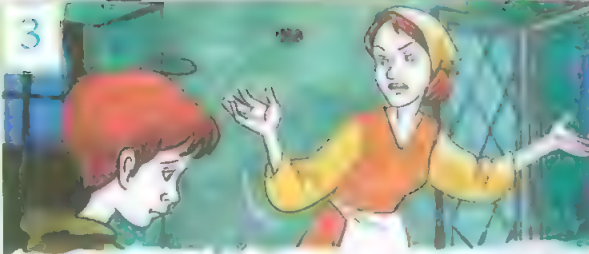
استمع واقرأ.

2



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

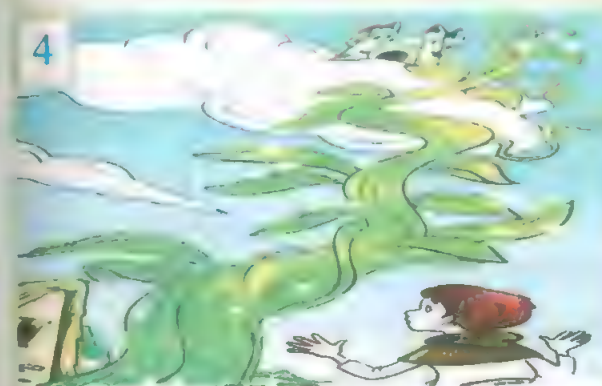
مفم الطيبة الما لاسقة قلا جاك " آه " قال " أنا لى حبات فاصوليا مميزة. هل تريد أن تشتريها؟ ستجعلك غنياً "



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى جاك الحبوب. لكن كانت أمه غاضبة جداً. وقالت " نحن نحتاج طعاماً يا جاك. نحتاج فاصوليا " ألقى جاك الحبوب خارج النافذة " آسف يا أمي. اعتقدت أنها ستساعدنا " ذهب جاك إلى فراشه وهو حزين وجوعان جداً.

4



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

في اليوم التالي رأى جاك فاصوليا عالية جداً في الحديقة. كانت تذهب إلى السحب. صعد جاك الفاصوليا. في الأعلى، رأى قلعة. ذهب جاك إلى الداخل ليرى إذا كان هناك من يحتاج إلى المساعدة.



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the table. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen was a golden egg.

فجأة رأى جاك عملاقاً كبيراً جداً. كان يحسب أكياس من العملات الذهبية. كانت هناك دجاجة على الطاولة. كانت الدجاجة في قفص. بجانب الدجاجة كان هناك بيضة ذهبية.

هناك أحد يحتاج إلى المساعدة.

6



The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!"

بدت الدجاجة حزينة جدًا. كانت دجاجة سحرية. وكانت تستطيع أن تتكلم وصرخت الدجاجة "ساعدني من فضلك. أنقذني من هذا العملاق المخيف!"

7



As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

مجرد أن وصل جاك لحديقته جذب فأسه وقام بقطع ساق فاصوليا. وسقط العملاق على الأرض وفر هاربا. كانت الدجاجة عيدة! ونالت حريتها أخيرا.

8



"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

قالت الدجاجة "شكرا على مساعدتك يا جاك. أنت ولد طيب. من فضلك هل يمكنك أن أقيم معك أنت ووالدتك؟" ثم يهد جاك وأمه سريره. وقاما ببيع البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام. وعاش جاك وأمه في سعادة دائمة.

Think and discuss with your partner.

- Did you like the story? Why? Why not?

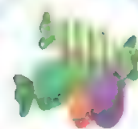
I liked the story because it's interesting.

I didn't like the story because it's boring.

Vowel sounds الأصوات المتحركة

short (a)

candy

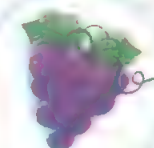


long (a)

cake



grapes



short (e)

egg



bread



bean



'meat



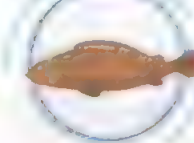
long (e)

short (i)

milk



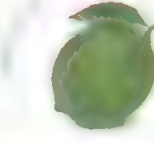
fish



rice



lime



long (i)

Long (a) sound has different spellings.

صوت (a) الممدود له حروف مختلفة.

cake a_e snake

rain ai

pain

gray ay

stay

stay

Math

Decimal fractions

الكسور العشرية

Remember

numerator البسط $\frac{1}{6}$ denominator المقام

Look and say.

$$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$$

$$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$$

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$$

$$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$$

$$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$$

Did you know?

$$0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400$$

Change as the examples.

$$0.40 = \frac{2}{5}$$

$$0.50 = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$0.75 = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$$

$$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$$

$$\frac{3}{5} = 0.60$$

$$0.5 = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$0.20 = \frac{1}{5}$$

انظر وقُل.



غير الصيغة كالأمثلة.



Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

much - market - beans - go

Mother : Where did you (1) ?

Jack : I went to the (2)

Mother : What did you buy?

Jack : I bought some (3)

Mother : How (4) did you pay?

Jack : I paid 10 pounds.

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1 We buy and sell things at the (market - hospital - club).

2 A (cage - castle - coin) is a very large building.

3 I liked the story (to - but - because) it's nice.

4 To cut something means to (boil - mix - chop) it.

5 They can eat (beans - cages - castles).

6 To (chop - grab - buy) is to pick up something quickly.

7 Please save me from this (terrible - small - little) giant.

3 Circle the odd one out.

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة (في الصوت).

1 grape - bread - egg - head

2 rain - pain - chain - bean

3 rice - cake - lime - nice

4 lime - cake - snake - lake

4 Read and match.

- a giant a to pick something up quickly
 b grab b a very, very big person
 c chop c a box in which we keep animals
 d cage d to cut something down

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

5 Change into decimal fractions.

حول إلى كسور عشرية.

- 1 $\frac{1}{2} = \dots\dots\dots$ 2 $\frac{1}{3} = \dots\dots\dots$ 3 $\frac{3}{4} = \dots\dots\dots$
 4 $\frac{2}{10} = \dots\dots\dots$ 5 $\frac{2}{5} = \dots\dots\dots$ 6 $\frac{2}{3} = \dots\dots\dots$

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

قرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 for - me - Thank - helping - you - .
 2 eggs - They - sold - to buy - the - food - golden - .
 3 chopped - Jack - beanstalk - the - down - .
 4 want - buy - beans - Do - to - you - these - ?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ jack went to the market to sell the cow

Lessons
(5 & 6)

WRITING & PROJECT

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.





weigh out

يزن



stuff

يحتشو



mix

يخلط

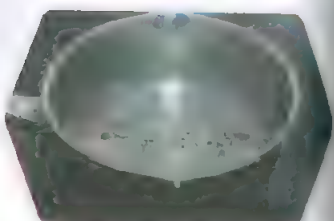
Verbs of cooking

أفعال الطهي



bake

يخبز



boil

يغلي



cut

يقطع



pour

يصب

tbsp = tablespoon

ملعقة كبيرة

tsp = teaspoon

ملعقة صغيرة

Extra Vocabulary

semolina	سمولينا (القمح المطحون)	mixture	خليط - مزيج	share	يشارك
melted butter	زبدة مذابة	syrup	شراب - عصير	seller	بائع
baking powder	مسحوق خبز	lemon juice	عصير الليمون	poster	ملصق
cocktail juice	عصير كوكتيل	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه	dishes	أطباق
classmate	زميل الدراسة				



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cook	يُطبخ / طبخ	need	يحتاج / needed
bake	يخبز / baked	talk	يتحدث / talked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make	يُصنع / made	draw	يرسم / drew
find	يجد / found	tell	يخبر / told
think	يفكر - يعتقد / thought	learn	يتعلم / learnt



Important expressions and prepositions

turn on	يشغل
for 30 minutes	لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة
find out	يكتشف - يعرف
take out	يخرج
share with	يشارك مع
mix ingredients	يخلط المكونات
look pretty	يبدو جميلاً
such as	مثل
pour into	يسكب في
boil.....for	يغلي لمدة
lots of	كثيراً من

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

INGREDIENTS

- 2 cups semolina
- 1 cup sugar
- 1 cup melted butter
- 1 tsp baking powder
- 1 cup coconut
- 1 almond
- 3 cup water
- 2 cup honey



My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames and stuffed vegetables. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

نحن نطهو كثير من الأشياء المختلفة مثل شوربة العدس والبقول المدمس والخضراوات المحشوة. المفضل لدي هو أن أخبز البسبوسة. وهذه هي طريقة عملها.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this! Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

وأما تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن حتى يصبح ساخناً. ثم وزن المكونات. ثم تخلط البسبوسة، جوز الهند، السكر، والزبدة المنصهرة. يجب أن تخلط هذه المكونات باليد. أحب القيام بهذا! ثم تضيف الزبادي وتصب الخليط في طبق الخبز.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

يمكنك استخدام سكين لعمل أشكال ماسية فوق البسبوسة. ضع حبة لوز على كل شكل معين (ماسية). ستبدو جميلة حقاً. اخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

ثم يعمل الشرابات. ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في القدر. اغلي الخليط لمدة عشر دقائق.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

ثم بإخراجها من الفرن. ثم صب الشرابات على البسبوسة. قم بتقطيع البسبوسة وتشاركها مع عائلتك!

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- We need salt to make basbousa.
- You need to turn your oven on to get it hot.
- We mix the ingredients of basbousa by hand.

Project

A Poster About Mango

ملصق عن المانجو

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it.

المانجو تنمو في مصر. يمكننا عمل الكثير من المشروبات والأطباق بها.

We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

يمكننا عمل عصير مانجو لذيذ أو عصير كوكتيل كما يمكننا أيضاً عمل سلطة فواكه وكعكة المانجو.



Help your child make a poster about fruit in Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بعمل ملصق عن الفاكهة في مصر.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

grapes - Would - How about - some

Seller : Hello. (1) you like some bananas?

Mona : No, thank you. I would like some (2).

Seller : (3) buying some carrots?

Mona : Yes, please!

Seller : How about buying some oranges?

Mona : No, thank you. I would like (4) apples.

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1- Bake the basbousa | a- mango juice from mangoes. |
| 2- Would you like some carrots? | b- in Egypt. |
| 3- We can make delicious | c- Yes, please. |
| 4- You need to turn your | d- in the oven for 30 minutes. |
| 5- Mangoes grow | e- oven on to get it hot. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

3 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1- We cook lots of things such as lentil (soup - soap - wood).
- 2- Turn (off - down - on) the oven to get it hot.
- 3- (Poor - Pour - Hit) the mixture into a baking dish.
- 4- Mangoes (grow - fly - make) in Egypt.

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

basbousa - My - is - to - thing - bake - favorite - .

the basbousa - the oven - for - Bake - in - minutes - 30 - .

you - some - like - Would - bananas - ?

5 Look and write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Mangoes

Guiding words:

favorite - grow - drinks - juice - salad - delicious



6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

how about some mangoes omar

Review on Unit (1)



We plant
our food



Decimal fractions

$$\frac{1}{5} = 0,20$$

$$\frac{1}{4} = 0,25$$

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0,333$$

- What would you like?
- I'd like some carrots.
- Are there any beans?
- No, there aren't any beans.
- How about buying some coconuts?
- No, thanks.
- I'd like a banana.
- I'd like an orange.

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **Five (5)** sentences.

اكتب فقرة من ٥ جمل.

Chickpeas

"Chickpeas - ingredient - legumes - healthy"

Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes. Chickpeas aren't a fruit or a vegetable. They belong to legumes. Chickpeas are a healthy food. They are good for the digestive system.

Mangoes

"grow - drinks - dishes - juice - cake"

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

My favorite recipe

"bake - mix - add - almonds - oven"

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. We mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. Then we add the yogurt. We put almonds on top of it. We bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	فول		ليمون
	جزر		عنب
	شوكولاتة		بصل
	بيض		أناناس
	جوز الهند		مفضل

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	حمص		بذور
	مكونات - مقادير		صفوف
	البقوليات		يحدد
	الجهاز الهضمي		منتج
	طاقة		مستهلك

Lessons (3 & 4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	كشري		يجذب
	مهلبية		قلعة
	طماطم		يقطع
	عملاق		قفص

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	يغلي		يصب
	يحشو		يخبز
	يضيف		يزن
	يخلط		وصفة أكل

Activities on Unit (1)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Chickpeas are an important ingredient.
- Chickpeas are a vegetable.
- Peanuts are a kind of legumes.
- Chickpeas are a kind of legumes.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

consumers - tertiary - producers - energy

The sun provides (1)..... for plants to grow.
Plants and trees are called (2)..... Animals are called (3).....
There are three kinds of consumers.
They are primary, secondary and (4).....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

- Decomposers give (a) buying some lemons?
- I would like (b) got any grapes.
- How about (c) nutrients back to the ecosystem.
- We haven't (d) some apples, please.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Unit (1)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The food chain shows how plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. These are called producers. They get energy from the sun. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The food chain shows how plants and animals get their (water - air - energy).
- 2 We can see (plants - birds - fish) at the start of the chain.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 Where do the producers get their energy from?
- 2 What do animals eat?

5 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 My uncle (eats - collects - breaks) eggs and sell them at the market.
- 2 I would like (a - an - some) orange, please.
- 3 How about (buy - to buy - buying) an apple, Mum?
- 4 A (cage - castle - giant) is a box in which we keep animals.
- 5 (Pour - Bake - Cut) the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 cook - We - of - things - different - lots - .
- 2 this - from - Save - terrible - me - giant - .
- 3 have - , please - Do - carrots, - any - you - ?

7 Look and write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Your favorite recipe

Guiding words:

(bake - mix - sugar - coconut - oven - delicious)



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

8 Punctuate the following.

⇒ mangoes grow in egypt

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (2) I want to be healthy!

أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة



In this unit the student will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about sports.
- talk about sports he/she is good or bad at.
- read and listen to a science fiction story.
- learn how to say single-syllable words.
- write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.
- give a presentation about how to help his/her local environment.

Lesson (1)

SPORTS

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



squash
الاسكواش



karate
الكاراتيه



sailing
البحار



kung fu
كونغ فو



Sports
الألعاب الرياضية



tennis
التنيس



football
كرة القدم



handball
كرة اليد



swimming
السباحة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

popular	شعبي / مشهور	bad	سيء	agree	يوافق
club	نادي	worse	أسوأ	match	مباراة
later	فيما بعد / لاحقاً	good	جيد	like	مثل
awesome	رائع	better	أفضل	favorite	مفضل

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past		
watch	يشاهد	watched	love	يحب	loved
agree	يوافق	agreed	look	يبدو	looked
want	يريد	wanted	try	يجرب	tried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

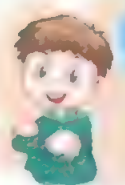
Present	Past	Present	Past	
win	يفوز	won	يعرف	knew
go	يذهب	went	يرى	saw

Important expressions and prepositions

It's great!	إنه رائع!	So do I.	وإننا كذلك (أيضاً).
Me too!	وإننا أيضاً!	look fun	يبدو ممتعاً
good at	جيد في	bad at	سيء في

Did you know ?

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!



هذه كرة القدم الفقاعية. هناك الكثير من الرياضات غير العادية التي يمكنك تجربتها. إنها ممتعة ويمكنك من الحفاظ على صحتك!

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

- Seleem : What are you watching?
Wael : An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini - it's great. I love squash!
رانيمة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلي ونور الشربيني - إنه شيء رائع - أنا أحب الاسكواش.
وإننا أيضاً! من الفائز?
Seleem : Me too! Who's winning?
Wael : Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.
رنيم - إنها ماهرة جداً في لعب الاسكواش.
Seleem : I know. What sport are you good at?
Wael : I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?
أنا جيد جداً في لعب التنس، ولكنني سيئ في لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك?
Seleem : I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.
أنا جيد في لعب الاسكواش، ولكنني سيئ في لعب التنس وأحب كرة القدم أيضاً.
Wael : So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.
إننا أيضاً نحب التنس، ولكنني سيئ في لعب كرة القدم وأحب كرة القدم أيضاً.
Seleem : Yes, let's go to the club later.
Wael : Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?
نعم، لنذهب إلى النادي لاحقاً.
نعم! وما هي الرياضات الأخرى التي تشاهدها في التلفزيون?
Seleem : I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو. وأنت?
Wael : My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!
المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار. الإبحار يبدو ممتعاً.
Seleem : Great! So what time do you want to play football?
رائع! في أي وقت تريد لعب كرة القدم?
Wael : About five?
حوالي الساعة الخامسة?
Seleem : Awesome - see you in the club later!
رائع - أراك في النادي لاحقاً!

Help your child listen and read the dialog.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Anas and Seif are talking about animals.
- 2 Seif loves tennis.
- 3 Anas is good at playing tennis.
- 4 They want to play a game of football.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

sailing - squash - watching - great

- Safia : What are you (1) ?
- Rahma : An old (2) match.
- Safia : Do you like squash?
- Rahma : Yes, it's (3) .
- Safia : What other sports do you like?
- Rahma : My favorites are swimming and (4) .

3 Read and match. اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 What sport are | 9 at playing tennis. |
| 2 She's very good | 10 want to play football? |
| 3 I'm better at tennis | 11 you good at? |
| 4 What time do you | 12 than I am at football. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences. اقرأ وأعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 playing - I'm - bad - at - tennis - .
- 2 watching - karate - I - love - kung fu - and - .
- 3 time - football - want to - What - do - play - you - ?
- 4 good - at - sport - you - What - are - ?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences. انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Guiding words:

Your favorite sport
(favorite - club - friends - Friday)



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

6 Punctuate the following.
she s very good at swimming

Lesson (2)

I'M GOOD AT ...

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



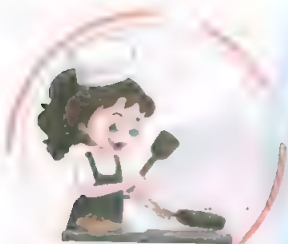
walking across the desert
المشي عبر الصحراء



climbing trees
تسلق الأشجار



jumping
القمر



cooking
الطبخ / الطهي



I'm good at...

أنا أجيد في



drawing
الرسم



taekwondo
التايكوندو



doing jigsaws
عمل أحجية الصور المقطعة

Good at جيد في

To talk about things we do or don't do well, we use:

good at جيد في
great at رائع في
bad at سيء في

+ $v + ing$
+ noun

e.g. I'm very good at swimming.
I'm great at football.
I'm bad at sailing.

Spelling rule

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (-e) نحذفه عند إضافة (ing).

make — making

take — taking

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.



I'm good at reading Arabic, but I'm bad at making dinner. What about you?

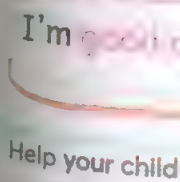
أنا جيد في قراءة اللغة العربية، لكنني سيئ في إعداد العشاء. وماذا عنك؟

I'm bad at playing the piano, but I'm good at singing.

أنا سيئ في العزف على البيانو، لكنني جيد في الغناء.



I'm good at table tennis because I can move fast. What sport are you good at?



I'm good at football because I practice a lot.

أنا جيد في لعبة كرة القدم لأنني أمارسها كثيرا.



Help your child use good at.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم good at.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

1- Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 Mariam is good at (play - plays - playing) football.
- 2 Ali is very good at (write - writing - writes) poems (قصائد).
- 3 Amr is bad at (speak - speaking - speaks) French.
- 4 My children are great at (help - helps - helping) their mom in the kitchen.
- 5 I'm good at (reading - read - reads) Arabic.
- 6 Monkeys are good (in - on - at) climbing trees.
- 7 My sister is bad (at - on - in) playing the piano.
- 8 The camel is good at (walk - walks - walking) across the desert.
- 9 Reem is bad at (draw - drawing - draws).
- 10 Aser is good at (play - plays - playing) tennis.
- 11 I'm good (in - on - at) football.
- 12 I'm bad (in - on - at) karate.
- 13 What sport are you good (on - in - at)?
- 14 I'm bad at (handball - rice - meat).
- 15 What are you bad (in - on - at)?

2- Correct the verbs.

صحح الأفعال.

- 1 I'm good at (play) handball.
- 2 My sister is very good at (write) stories.
- 3 Omar is bad at (speak) Chinese.
- 4 They're great at (help) their dad on the farm.

Help your child deal with such questions:

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Adding and subtracting decimals

جمع وطرح الكسور العشرية

When you add or subtract decimals, treat them like whole numbers, but move the decimal point at the end so the position matches the numbers.

عند جمع أو طرح الكسور العشرية، تعامل معهم كأعداد صحيحة، لكن انتقل نقطة العشرية إلى النهاية لكي يتطابق الموضع مع الأرقام الأصلية.



$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ + 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ - 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

The position of the decimal point has to match the position in the original numbers.

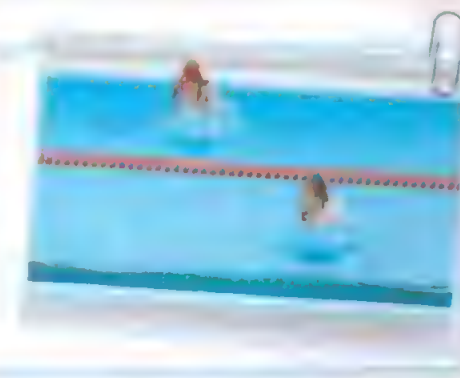
موضع (مكان) العلامة العشرية يجب أن يتطابق مع الموضع في الأرقام الأصلية.

Try this sum:

Farida swam 100 meters in 2.763 minutes.
Zeinab swam 100 meters in 2.341 minutes.

Who was faster, Farida or Zeinab?

How much faster was she?

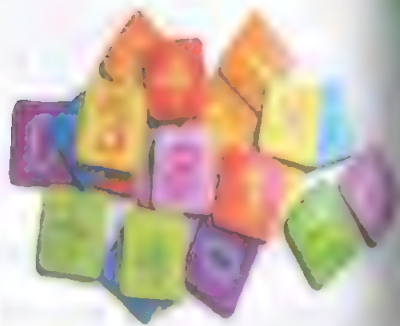


Help your child add and subtract decimals.

ساعد طفلك أن يجمع وي طرح الأعداد العشرية.

1- Circle the correct answer.

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.



- 7.983 + 5.432 = (13.415 / 134.15)
 9.076 - 8.894 = (1.7970 / 17.970)
 60.678 - 50.356 = (103.220 / 10.322)
 129.675 - 6.231 = (123.444 / 12.3444)

2- Solve the following problems.

حل المسائل الكلامية التالية.

- If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?
 Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran?
 Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs 2.657 kg and the other weighs 3.205 kg. Find :
 a) the total weight of both watermelons.
 b) the weight difference between the two watermelons.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Heba is good at playing chess.
 Ali is bad at drawing.
 Heba's mother is good at making cakes.
 Heba's father is bad at reading Arabic.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm eleven years old. I'm in primary five. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he is bad at helping me in the kitchen! My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Dalia is good at playing (football - tennis - handball).
 Aser is good at playing (handball - tennis - karate).

B) Answer the following questions.

What is Aser bad at?

What is Salma good at?

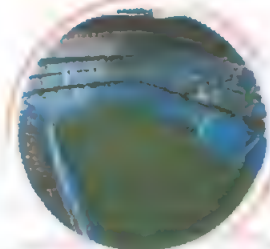
SPORTS PLACES AND EQUIPMENT

أماكن وأدوات رياضية

Lesson
(3 / A)

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



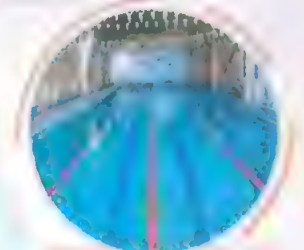
football pitch
ملعب كرة قدم



tennis court
ملعب تنس



tennis ball
كرة تنس



swimming pool
حمام سباحة



squash rackets
مضارب اسكواش



swimming goggles
نظارة سباحة



karate suit
بدلة كاراتيه



football boots
حذاء كرة القدم



Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- 1- What are you favorite sports?
- 2- Monkeys are good making dinner.
- 3- What are your good at?
- 4- I'm bad at at climbing trees.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1. (Monkeys - Cats - Camels) are good at walking across the desert.
- 2. Ali is good at (play - plays - playing) tennis.
- 3. Monkeys are good (in - on - at) climbing trees.
- 4. I'm very good at (draw - drawing - draws).
- 5. I'm bad at (make - makes - making) cakes.

Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. you - are - What - at - good - ?

Solve the following sums.

حل المسائل الآتية.

5. 3 7 2 3. 4 5 6 8. 5 7 6 7. 2 3 5
3. 1 2 4 5. 2 7 9 2. 3 4 2 4. 1 2 4

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

different	مختلف	wall	جدار
racket	مضرب	kick	ركل
moves	حركات	awesome	رائع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present (الحاضر)	Past (الماضي)
kick يشوط - يركل	kicked
move يتحرك	moved
practice يمارس	practiced
use يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present (الحاضر)	Past (الماضي)
do/does يفعل	did
can يستطيع	could
think يفكر	thought
wear يرتدي / يلبس	wore

Important expressions and prepositions

different moves
do high kicks
have to
go swimming
do karate
with walls all round

حركات مختلفة
يقيم بعمل ركلات عالية
يجب أن
يسبح - يذهب للسباحة
كاراتيه
تحيط بها الجدران من كل مكان

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع واقراء وتبادل الأدوار.

Boy 1 : I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أنا أحب رياضي - إن ركل الكرة في الملعب هو الشيء المفضل لدي.



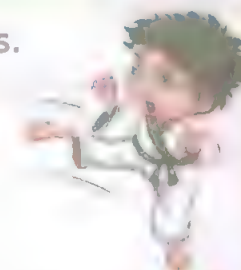
Girl 1 : Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

أفضل شيء بالنسبة لي هو التواجد في المسبح وممارسة هذه الرياضة. أشعر بأنني شخص مختلف.



Boy 2 : I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

أحب الطريقة التي يمكنني بها القيام بالعديد من الحركات المختلفة. أنا أحب الركلات العالية. بدلتني لهذه الرياضة بيضاء.



Girl 2 : I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

أنا أحب هذا الرياضة لأنني جيدة جدًا فيها. كل مكان. لديك مضرب صغير وتتحرك بسرعة كبيرة. وتشعر بالحر جدًا أيضًا.



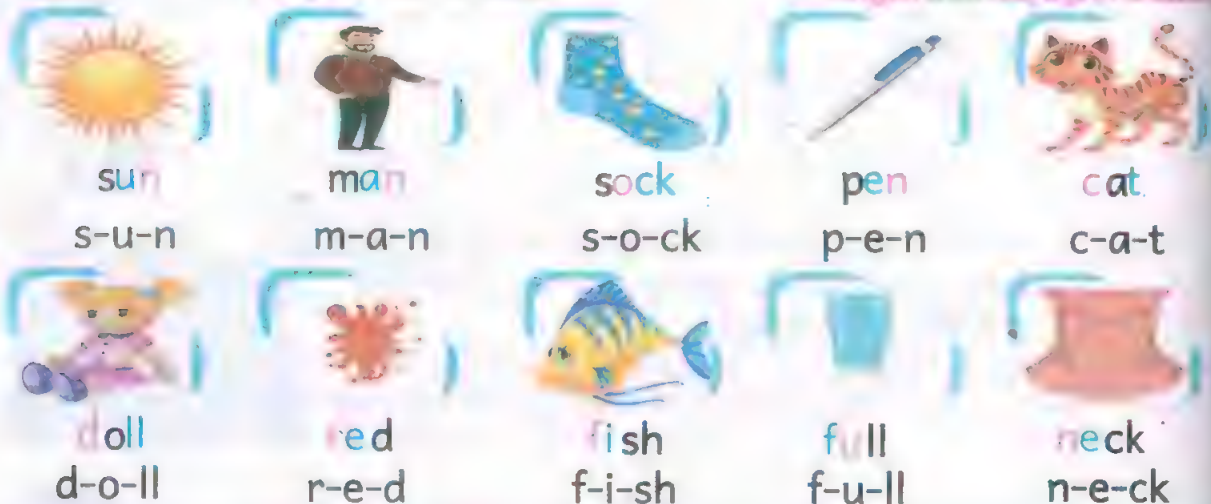
Boy 3 : I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأنا أمارسها كثيرًا في الصيف. لديهم ملاعب تليس في الحديقة وأنا أذهب هناك مع أصدقائي.



PRONUNCIATION

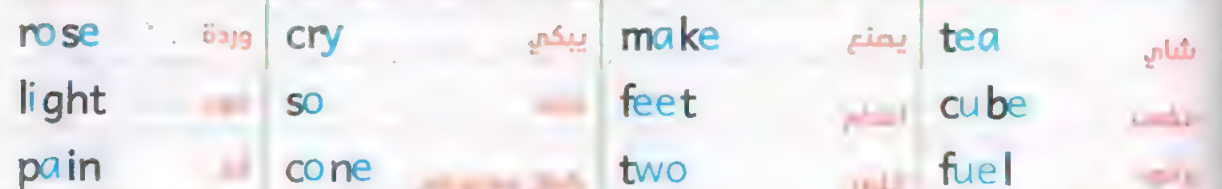
- Words with three sounds:



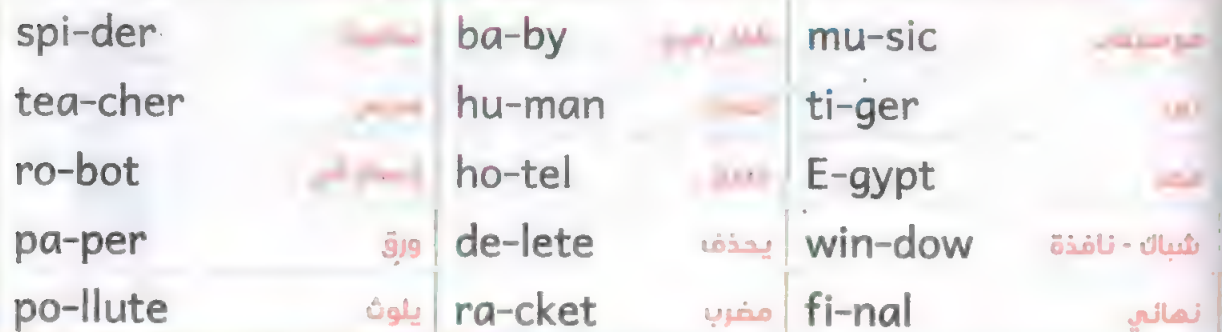
- Words with short vowel sound:



- Words with long vowel sound:



- Words with two syllables:



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) false. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- You wear a blue suit in karate. ()
- Football is the most popular sport. ()
- Players play football on a court. ()
- Players wear football boots to play football. ()

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

goggles - court - pool - kung fu

I go to a swimming (1) if I want to swim.
I do high kicks in (2) . I play tennis on a
tennis (3) . I wear (4) to go
swimming.

3 Read and match. اقرأ ووصل.

- When I play football, (a) tennis balls.
- In tennis we use (b) do high kicks.
- I use squash rackets (c) I wear football boots.
- In kung fu I (d) to play squash.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Help your child identify these sounds. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات.

4 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 We play football on a football (court - pitch - pool).
- 2 In karate players wear (suits - goggles - shorts).
- 3 Tennis is played on a (pool - court - pitch).
- 4 People swim in a swimming (sea - lake - pool).
- 5 In football players wear football (boots - suits - goggles).
- 6 In tennis players use (karate - goggles - tennis) balls.
- 7 We hit the ball with (rackets - goggles - boots) in squash.
- 8 I wear (trainers - boots - goggles) to go swimming.

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1 swimming - I - pool - go - a swimming - in - .

2 use - play - I - rackets - to - squash - .

3 We - tennis - play - a court - on - .

4 kicks - kung fu - I - high - do - in - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

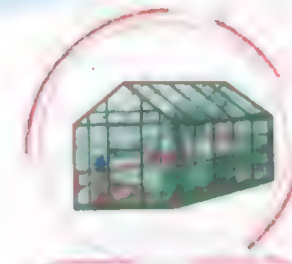
⇒ i think it s an awesome sport

Lesson
(4)

AN AWFUL NIGHTMARE!

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

shade
ظلnightmare
كابوسair freshener
معطر الجوacid rain
مطر حمضيemissions
انبعاثاتtoxic
سامgreenhouse
موبة زجاجية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Definitions

toxic	very bad to eat or breathe	سم
air freshener	a way of making the air smell cleaner	مطهر الجو
emissions	gases from cars or factories	انبعاثات
shade	out of the sun	ظل
nightmare	a bad dream	كوابيس
greenhouse	a glass building used for growing plants	صوبة / حضانة
acid	has chemicals in it	حمض / كيميائي

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

awful	فظيع / مروع	plastic	بلاستيك	after	بعد
air	الهواء	dream	حلم	less	أقل
traffic	حركة المرور	planet	كوكب	more	أكثر
problems	مشكلات	holiday	إجازة		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
breathe	breathed	fall	fell
try	tried	swim	swam
remember	remembered	drive	drove
wait	waited	wake up	woke up
call	called	get	got

Irregular verbs

Help your child identify these words.

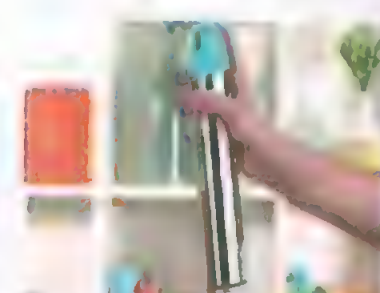
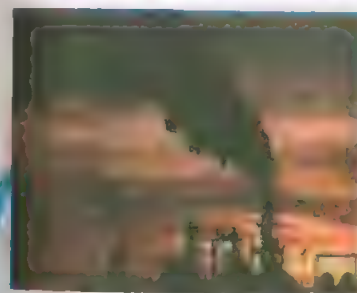
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

try to	يحاول أن	have to	يجب أن
smell better	ذو رائحة أفضل	because of	بسبب
go outside	يخرج من البيت	It is lovely to	ممتع جداً أن
too many	كثير جداً (للعديد)	get ready for	يستعد لـ
too much	كثير جداً (كثيرة)	look after	يرعى بـ
dangerous for	خطير على	need to	يحتاج أن
work hard	يعمل بجد	keep ... clean	يحافظ على نظافة
It's time to	حان الوقت لـ	cut down	يقطع

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and **toxic**. Inside the house we use **air fresheners** to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside - there are too many cars and too much traffic. There are too many **emissions** from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.

المدرسة لأن الهواء سيئ للغاية. اضطر أخي الصغير للذهاب إلى المستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends – the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun.

Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black.

In the old days, it was lovely to have rain after a very hot day, but now the rain is acid and when it falls we can't go out.



أذكر عندما كنا نذهب إلى الحديقة ونلعب مع أصدقائنا. العشب أخضر والسماء زرقاء. يمكننا رؤية الشمس. الآن نحن لا نرى الشمس anymore لأن السماء رمادية أو سوداء. في الأيام القديمة، كان من الجميل أن نرى المطر بعد يوم حار جداً، لكن الآن المطر حمضي وعندما يسقط لا يمكننا الخروج.

I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty. Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more. But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare!

أذكر عندما كنا نذهب في إجازة ونلعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. كنا نسبح في البحر، لكن الآن نحن لا نستطيع السباحة لأن فيه الكثير من البلاستيك وهو قذر. أشياء أخرى أذكر أنني كنت أأكل الفواكه من الأشجار وأجلس في ظلها في الأيام الحارة. لكن الآن قُطعت جميع الأشجار، لذلك نحن نحصل على الفواكه من البيوت الزجاجية ولا يمكننا الجلوس بالخارج anymore. لكن انتظر، ماذا هذا؟ إنه صوت أمي التي تطلبني للذهاب إلى المدرسة! لقد كان كل هذا كابوساً مخيفاً جداً!

Look outside and the sky is blue and we can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!



على نظافة بحرنا، لكن يجب أن نعمل جاهدين على ذلك!

According to the writer's nightmare, answer the following questions:

- 1 Why can't the writer breathe?
- 2 What happened to the writer's brother?



Activities

- 1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

emissions - after - toxic - air fresheners

I can't breathe because the air is (1).....
We use (2)..... to make the air smell better. There are too many (3)..... from cars. We need to look (4)..... our planet.

- 2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 I had a bad dream; it was a (greenhouse - nightmare - shade).
- 2 Gases from cars or factories are called (air fresheners - greenhouses - emissions).
- 3 We should (look after - make - swim) our planet.
- 4 My little brother went to the (cinema - hospital - post office) because of problems with his breathing.
- 5 We can't go to school because the air is too (good - fresh - bad).
- 6 It's too hot so I'm sitting in the (shade - rain - sun).

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.
اقرأ وأعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 use - houses - We - air fresheners - our - in - .

2 go - park - the - play - to - I - to - .

3 need - after - to - We - our planet - look - .

4 Read and match.

1 On holidays, we
2 Toxic is
3 Acid means that it
4 We use air fresheners to

a make the air smell better.
b has chemicals in it.
c play on the beach.
d very bad to eat or breathe.

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

air pollution

Guiding words:

(emissions - breathe - lungs - air - toxic)



Lessons (5 & 6)

-WRITING - A SORTS BIOGRAPHY - PROJECT

Key Vocabulary

famous	مشهور	achievements	إنجازات
Egyptian	مصري	important	مهم - مهم
honor	تكریم - شرف	biography	سيرة ذاتية
water bodies	مسطحات مائية	champion	بطل
competitor	متنافس	wildlife	الحياة البرية
water pollution	تلوث الماء	agricultural	زراعي

Extra Vocabulary

taekwondo player	لاعب تايكوندو	therefore	لذلك
flag	علم	award	جائزة
ill	مريض	shower	دش / استحمام
prize	جائزة	information	معلومات
medal	ميدالية	career	الحياة المهنية
athlete	لاعب رياضي	harmful	ضار
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	organisms	الكائنات الحية
garbage	قمامة	habitat	موطن - بيئة

Important expressions and prepositions

famous for	مشهور بـ	think about	يفكر في
at the age of	في (عمر/ سن)	make sure	يتأكد
compete against	يتنافس ضد	make a list	يكتب قائمة
win a medal	يفوز بميدالية	throw garbage	يلقي القمامة
kill organisms	يقتل الكائنات الحية	hold for	يحمل لـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
compete	يتنافس	competed		speak	يتحدث	spoke	
practice	يمارس	practiced		begin	يبدأ	began	
happen	يحدث	happened		win	يفوز	won	
cause	يسبب	caused		become	يصبح	became	
change	يغير	changed		give	يعطي	gave	
destroy	يدمر	destroyed		say	يقول	said	
describe	يصف	described		write	يكتب	wrote	

Irregular verbs

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor.

هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكواندو مصرية مشهورة. فهي واحدة من الشخصين الذين حملوا العلم المصري في دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في طوكيو في عام ٢٠٢١. وهذا شرف عظيم.

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14.

Hedaya won many important awards. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

ولدت هداية في ٢١ أبريل ١٩٩٣. بدأت في ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو في سن السابعة وحققت العديد من الجوائز في سن الرابعة عشر.

فازت هداية بالعديد من الجوائز الهامة. فازت بالميدالية البرونزية في الألعاب الأولمبية في عام ٢٠١٦. فازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية في طوكيو في عام ٢٠٢١.

Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

هداية هي شخصية طيبة جدًا. في عام ٢٠١٦ ساعدت لاعبة رياضية مغربية بخصائص (المرأة غارماش) من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة. راجا لم يكن لديه أحد للعب ضدها، لذلك أصبحت هداية منافستها وخسرت المباراة. لذلك استطاعت راجا أن يفوز بالميدالية الذهبية. كان هذا لحظة خاصة جدًا للعبة بأكملها.

What does the future hold for Hedaya? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

ماذا يحمل المستقبل لهداية. إنها تتدرب بجد. فهي تريد حقًا أن تفوز بميدالية ذهبية!

Writing tip!

Writing a sports biography

- 1 Introduce the person, giving their name.
- 2 Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.
- 3 Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.
- 4 Say what you think could happen next for their career.

Write notes for a sports biography. Use phrases 1-6 to help you.



- 1 He / She was born on ...
- 2 He / She began ...
- 3 He / She was the first ...
- 4 He / She was / is successful because ...
- 5 He / She won ...
- 6 He / She is also / Moreover / As well as this, he/she is ...

Model

Sherif Osman was a famous Paralympic Egyptian powerlifting player. He began powerlifting at the age of 18. He was born in Minia on 15th September. He won many important awards. He won the African Championship for a second time in Algeria. He was a successful player because he was disabled. He won the World Championship title in the men's up to 59 kg in Mexico City. Moreover he won Egypt's First Gold Medal at Rio Paralympic.

استمع واقرأ.

Project Listen and read.

Water pollution

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution.

Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs.

It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.



المياه يمكن أن تقتل الكائنات الحية التي تعيش في المياه مثل الأسماك والطيور والسرطان. يمكن أن تقتل الطيور التي تأكل السمك. التلوث المائي يمكن أن يتسبب في فقدان الحيوانات بيوتها وتغيير بيئاتها.

Causes

سبب

- Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers.
- Wastewater and chemicals from factories.
- Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers.

Effects

تأثير

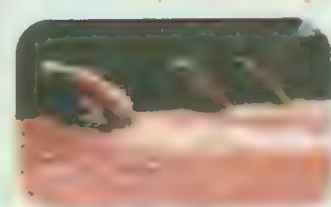
- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.
- Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.

Solutions

الحلول

- Save as much water as possible.
- Take shorter showers.
- Avoid running water.
- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

المياه الملوثة من مياه الصرف الصحي والمخلفات الكيميائية من المصانع.



المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية في الأنهار.



يمكن توفير المياه عن طريق تقليل وقت الاستحمام.



Help your child read about water pollution.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تلوث المياه.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

honor - flag - carried - taekwondo

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian (1) player. She is one of the two people who (2) the Egyptian (3) at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great (4).

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1 Hedaya Malak won the bronze (pedal - medal - prize).

2 Hedaya Malak carried the Egyptian (bag - flag - handbag).

3 Harmful chemicals cause water (solution - pollution - invitation).

4 Never throw (cartridges - plants - garbage) in or near a lake or beach.

5 Dirty water can make children and old people (ill - good - kind).

3 Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

1 Hedaya Malak is a famous (a) as possible.

2 Rivers, lakes and seas (b) Egyptian taekwondo player.

3 Water pollution can (c) are water bodies.

4 Save as much water (d) kill organisms.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Water pollution can (play - meet - kill) organisms.

2 Water pollution cause animals to (make - play - change) their habitats.

B) Answer the following questions.

1 What causes water pollution?

2 How can water pollution kill birds?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

A biography about a famous Egyptian person

Guiding words:

(born - began - successful - medal - score - famous)



Mohamed Salah

Review on Unit (2)

Sports



tennis



football



swimming



sailing



handball



squash



karate

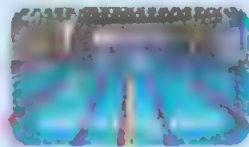


kung fu

sports places and equipment



swimming goggles



football boots



squash rackets

I want
to be
healthy!

three sound words



d-o-ll



f-i-sh



f-u-ll



n-e-ck

two-syllable words

ba-by

ti-ger

spi-der

mu-sic

win-dow

ra-cket

- I'm very **good** at **drawing**.
- They are **great** at **helping** their mom.
- He is **bad** at **football**.

Math : Adding and subtracting decimal

2 . 3 6 7

10 . 5 1 2

8 . 1 4 5

8 . 1 4 5

10 . 5 1 2

2 . 3 6 7

Writing Corner

Look and write a paragraph of **Five (5)** sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

The sport you're good at

"popular - pitch - team - 11 players - goalkeeper - score"

I'm good at playing football. It's a popular sport all over the world. Most people play it on football pitches. A football team has 11 players; one of them is a goalkeeper. The winning team scores the most goals. I like football very much.



Sports and equipment

Most people like sports. Each sport has its equipment. To play football, you must have football boots. You need a football pitch to play on. To play tennis with a friend you must have tennis rackets and a tennis ball. To go swimming you must have goggles. To do karate, you must have a karate suit.



Water pollution

"chemicals - kill organisms - wastewater - solutions"

When chemicals go into water, we call this water pollution. Polluted water can kill organisms. Wastewater from sinks, toilets and showers pollutes water. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We must find quick solutions. We shouldn't throw garbage in water.



Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	التنس		الكونغ فو
	الإبحار		الإسكواش
	السباحة		كرة القدم
	الكاراتيه		كرة اليد

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	يتسلق الأشجار		يقفز
	يطبخ		أحجية الصور المقطعة
	يرسم		يمشي عبر الصحراء

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ملعب كرة قدم		ملعب تنس
	حمام سباحة		حذاء كرة قدم
	مضارب إسكواش		نظارة سباحة
	بدلة كاراتيه		كرة التنس

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	معطر الجو		انبعاثات
	ظل		صوبة زجاجية
	سام		كابوس

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	سيرة ذاتية		مشهور
	منافس		ميدالية

Activities on Unit (2)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- I use goggles when I play football.
- I go swimming in a swimming pool.
- I play squash with a racket.
- I use a tennis ball when I do karate.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

rivers - lose - chemicals - organisms

When harmful (1) go into water bodies like (2), lakes and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill (3) that live in the water, such as fish, birds and crabs. Water pollution can cause animals to (4) their homes. We should keep our water clean.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Mom is very good | a ready for school. |
| 2 It's time to get | b make people ill. |
| 3 Dirty water can | c gases from cars or factories. |
| 4 Emissions are | d at cooking. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. Hedaya won many important awards. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. We don't know what the future holds for Hedaya. She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

Choose the correct answer.

Hedaya got the (gold - silver - bronze) medal in Tokyo.

Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of (seven - eight - ten).

Answer the following questions.

When was Hedaya born?

What does Hedaya want to do in the future?

Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

Sama is good (in - at - for) swimming.

My sister is (happy - sad - bad) at sailing.

A bad dream is called a (nightmare - racket - greenhouse).

We use air fresheners to make the air (taste - smell - feel) better.

Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1 born - was - She - 5th - on - May - .

2 the - She - medal - won - bronze - .

3 are - good - squash - at - very - They - .

4 do - have - Egypt - What - we - in - sports - ?

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

النظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

A sports biography

Guiding words:

(Egyptian - taekwondo - won - bronze)



Hedaya Malak

Unit (3)

How do I look? كيف أبدو؟

In this unit the student will ...

listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.

listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.

learn about the geography of Egypt.

practice using the infinitive of purpose.

read a traditional folktale.

learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /ed/

multiply multi-digit numbers.

write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.

research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.



Lesson (1)

OUR TRIP TO AL FAYOUM

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



T-shirt
تي شيرت



sunglasses
نظارة شمسية



swimming shorts
سراويل - شورت للسباحة



sweater
بلوفر - سترة



sneakers
حذاء رياضي



pajamas
لبسة



necklace
قلادة



umbrella
مظلة



coat
معطف



galabeya
حلابية



uniform
زي مدرسي



scarf
عوميه

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

trip	رحلة	holiday	إجازة	sunny	مشمس
suitcase	حقيرة سفر	cool	بارد - جميل	pearl	لؤلؤة
pool	حمام سباحة - مسبح	stripes	خطوط	striped	مقلّم - منخط
man-made	من صنع الإنسان	really	حقًا	spotted	منقط
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	lovely	جميل - رائع	comfortable	مريح



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pack	يعد الحقيبة	know	يعرف
wait	ينتظر	take	ياخذ
need	يحتاج	wear	يرتدي
packed		knew	
waited		took	
needed		wore	



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It's so exciting!	إنه أمر مثير جدًا	I can't wait	لا أطيق الانتظار
I'm excited to see them.	أنا متحمس لرؤيتهم	for ages	منذ فترة طويلة
That's my favorite.	إنه المفضل لدي	walk around a lot	يتجول كثيرًا
on your feet	في قدميك	need to	يحتاج أن
come from	يأتي من	share with	يتشارك مع
find out	يكتشف	come on	هيا

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

- Mom** Aser, we need to **pack** our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.
يا أصر، نحتاج أن نحزم حقائبنا لقضاء إجازتنا غدًا.
- Aser** It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.
إنه أمر مثير للغاية! لا أطيق الانتظار للذهاب إلى الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم والعمّة ملك. وبالطبع فارس ودينا.
- Mom** I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!
أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة! ولكن هيا، نحن بحاجة إلى حزم حقائبنا!
- Aser** OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?
حسنًا، أحتاج إلى حزم قميصي الأخضر وسراويل السباحة لأن لديهم مسبحًا جميلًا، أليس كذلك؟
- Mom** Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.
نعم، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمسًا جدًا.
- Aser** Will I need a coat and a scarf?
هل سأحتاج إلى معطف وكوفية؟
- Mom** No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.
لا، يا أصر، لن تحتاج. ولكن يجب أن تحزم سترة (بلوزم). يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا في المساء.
- Aser** OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.
حسنًا، سأحزم سترتي الزرقاء. إنها المفضلة لدي.
- Mom** You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.
ستحتاج إلى حذاءك الرياضي لأننا سسنجول كثيرًا. وتحتاج إلى ارتداء شيء مريح في قدميك.
- Aser** What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?
ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدي؟ هل سأحتاج إلى الجلابية التي أعطتها لي الجدة؟
- Mom** No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.
لا، لن تحتاج. لكنني سأأخذ فلادتي الذهبية.
- Aser** Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the **stripes**. They're really cool!
همم. حسنًا. ماذا أحتاج أيضًا؟ أه، أنا أعرف! بيجامتي! سأأخذ البيجامة المقلّمة. إنها حقًا جميلة!



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Youssef went to school.
- 2 Nesma took a spotted umbrella.
- 3 Amira wore her striped uniform.
- 4 Amira went to the shopping mall.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

Why - Al Fayoum - excited - holiday

- Mom : Where are you going for (1) ?
- Maged : I'm going to (2) .
- Mom : (3) are you going there?
- Maged : To see my uncle Hatem.
- Mom : Are you (4) to see him?
- Maged : Yes, I am.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 We haven't seen them | a gold necklace. |
| 2 It will be | b our suitcases for our holiday. |
| 3 I will take my | c sunny tomorrow. |
| 4 We need to pack | d for ages. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

4 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 We need to (pack - back - bake) our suitcases for our holiday.
- 2 I can't (want - wait - feel) to go to Alexandria and swim in the sea.
- 3 I'm so (excite - exciting - excited) to see my uncle and cousins.
- 4 We're going to the beach. I need to pack my (sweater - swimming shorts - pajamas).
- 5 When I play football, I wear a (scarf - sweater - T-shirt).
- 6 I'll take my (T-shirt - coat - necklace). It can be very cold.
- 7 My mum wears a gold (scarf - necklace - dress).
- 8 I like my blue sweater. That's my (favorite - cool - favor).
- 9 I'll pack my (stripes - spots - striped) pajamas.
- 10 When it rains, I take my (shorts - umbrella - sunglasses).

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 excited - I'm - see - my - to - uncle - .
- 2 have - lovely - They - a - pool - .
- 3 need - What - do - to - I - pack - ?
- 4 Aser - is - Who - to - going - visit - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

CLIL: GEOGRAPHY

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



Countries and cities

Egypt	مصر	Sudan	السودان	Cairo	القاهرة
Fayoum	الفيوم	Libya	ليبيا		

Places in Egypt

the Nile	النيل	Wadi El Rayan	وادي الريان
the Red Sea	البحر الاحمر	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري
the Mediterranean Sea			البحر الأبيض المتوسط
Fayoum Depression			منخفض الفيوم

Directions

north	الشمال	south	الجنوب	east	الشرق	west	الغرب
-------	--------	-------	--------	------	-------	------	-------

Extra Vocabulary

capital	عاصمة	coast	ساحل	beautiful	جميلة
special	خاص - مميز	modern	حديث	oasis	واحة
huge	ضخم	lake	بحيرة	mountain	جبل
lie	تقع (للمكان)	reach	يصل	whale	حوت
sights	معالم سياحية	amazing	مذهل		

Important expressions and prepositions

lie to the west	تقع ناحية الغرب	on the coast	على الساحل
run through	يجري خلال	home to	موطن لـ

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Natural features in Egypt

المعالم الطبيعية في مصر

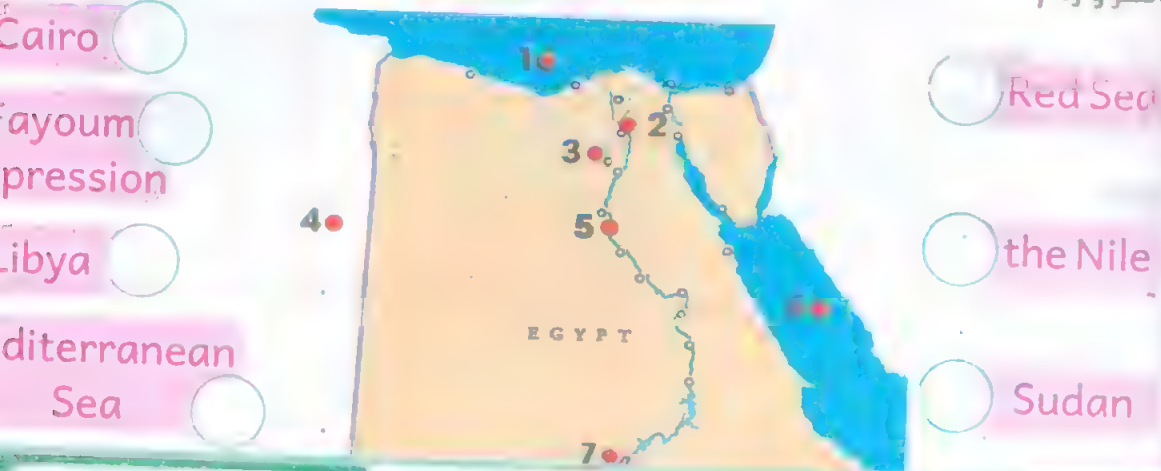
Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is a modern city in Lower Egypt. Libya lies to the west of Egypt and Sudan lies to the south. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast.

مصر بلد جميل جدًا. يجري النيل عبر البلاد حتي يصل إلى البحر المتوسط في الشمال. القاهرة عاصمة مصر. إنها مدينة حديثة في الوجه البحري. تقع ليبيا في غرب مصر و السودان في الجنوب. يقع البحر الأحمر على الساحل الشرقي لمصر.

The Fayoum Depression is a very special place, as it's an oasis with the biggest waterfalls in Egypt. It has the huge Wadi El Rayan park, which is home to many birds and animals. There are also fossils of whales! Fayoum has lakes and amazing sights all in one place!

منخفض الفيوم مكان مميز جدًا حيث أنه واحة بها أكبر الشلالات في مصر. به حديقة وادي الريان الضخمة التي بها حيوانات كثيرة. هناك أيضًا أحفاد الحيتان! الفيوم لديها بحيرات و مناظر رائعة كلها في مكان واحد!

Look and number.



انظر و رقم.

Unit (3) - How do I look?

Help your child read about natural features in Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن المعالم الطبيعية في مصر.

Lesson (2 / B)

CLIL: GEOGRAPHY



Key Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

flow

يتدفق

low

منخفض

fertile soil

تربة خصبة

wind erosion

التعرية بفعل الرياح

river banks

ضفتى النهر

canal

قناة



Places

Alexandria

الإسكندرية

the Aswan High Dam

السد العالي بأسوان

Port Said

مدينة بورسعيد

Bahr Youssef

بحر يوسف

the Nile Delta

دلتا النيل

the Nile Valley

وادي النيل

the White Desert

الصحراء البيضاء

The Western Desert

الصحراء الغربية



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

branch

فرع

lotus flower

زهرة اللوتس

waterway

مجرى مائي

stem

جذع - ساق

crops

محاصيل

sea level

مستوى البحر

triangle

مثلث

connected

متصل

area

منطقة

wind

رياح

land

أرض

sand

رمل

dates

بلح - تمر

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Definitions

التعريفات

Flow	the way water moves	يتدفق
Fertile	good land to grow plants and crops	خصبة
river bank	the land along the side of a river	ضفة نهر
wind erosion	When the wind moves the soil from one place to another, and causes change or damage to the soil	التعرية بفعل الرياح
canal	a waterway made by humans	قناة
soil erosion	when water, wind, or other things break down the soil, and take the soil particles away	التعرية (تآكل التربة)

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
need	needed	break	broke
happen	happened	take	took
change	changed	build	built
stretch	stretched	blow	blew
destroy	destroyed	spread out	spread out

Important expressions and prepositions

break down	يحل	look like	يشبه
good for	مفيد	connected to	متصل
along the river	على طول النهر	flow toward	يتدفق ناحية
on the bank of	على ضفة		

Help your child identify these words.

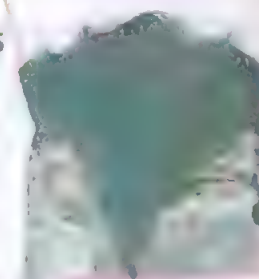
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

The Nile Delta

The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. About 20 kilometers north of Cairo, the Nile River spreads out into two branches. These two branches flow toward the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile Delta is the **fertile** soil between the two branches of the Nile. It stretches from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a triangle.



تقع دلتا النيل في الوجه البحري. على بُعد حوالي ٢٠ كيلومترا شمال القاهرة، يتفرع نهر النيل إلى فرعين. ويتدفق هذان الفرعان نحو البحر الأبيض المتوسط. دلتا النيل هي التربة الخصبة بين فرعي النيل. و تمتد من الإسكندرية إلى بورسعيد وتشبه المثلث.

The Nile Valley

The Nile Valley is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing crops like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower – the river and the **river banks** are the stem of the flower, and the Nile Delta is the flower.



The Fayoum Depression

The Fayoum Depression is in the Western Desert of Egypt. It is an area of land that is **low** below sea level. It was made by **wind erosion** about 1.8 million years ago. It is connected to the Nile River by the Bahr Youssef **canal**. This means there is water here, so it is a green place where many plants grow.



يقع منخفض الفيوم في الصحراء الغربية لمصر. إنه مساحة من الأرض منخفضة تحت مستوى سطح البحر. تكون عن طريق **التعرية بفعل الرياح** منذ حوالي ١.٨ مليون سنة. وهو مكان أخضر حيث تنمو فيه الكثير من النباتات.

Help your child learn about the geography of Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن جغرافيا مصر.

●● Look and read. What made the sculptures?

انظر واقرأ. ما الذي صنع المنحوتات؟



Wind erosion التعرية بفعل الرياح

In Egypt's White Desert, you can see some amazing sculptures. How did they get there? They were made by the wind.

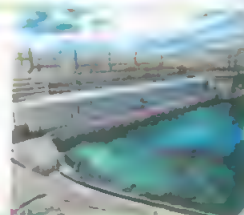
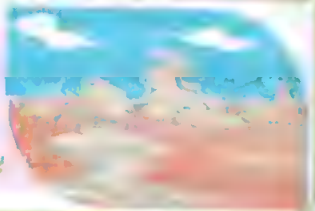
في الصحراء البيضاء في مصر يمكنك رؤية بعض المنحوتات الرائعة. كيف وصلت إلى هناك؟ تكونت بفعل الرياح.

There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago.

Over time, the wind blows sand and small stones against the rocks. The rocks change shape.

After many years, the wind and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures.

بعد سنوات عديدة، تحول الرياح والرمل الصخور إلى منحوتات جميلة.



Did you know ?

The Aswan High Dam was built to control the Nile flooding every year.

بني السد العالي بأسوان للتحكم في فيضان النيل كل عام.

Help your child learn about wind erosion.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن التعرية بفعل الرياح.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. ☐
- 2 The Nile Delta is about 30 kilometres north of Cairo. ☐
- 3 The Nile River spreads out into two branches. ☐
- 4 The two branches flow toward the Red Sea. ☐

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

(ago - Depression - canal - erosion)

The Fayoum (1) is in the Western Desert of Egypt. It was made by wind (2) about 1.8 million years (3). It is connected to the Nile River by the Bahr Youssef (4).

3 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة

- 1 Egypt is a beautiful (city - village - country).
- 2 Cairo is the (capital - town - village) of Egypt.
- 3 Libya (looks - sits - lies) to the west of Egypt.
- 4 The Fayoum (River - Depression - Mountain) is a very special place.
- 5 Wadi El Rayan Park is (home - house - room) to many birds.
- 6 The Nile River spreads out into two (mountains - seas - branches).
- 7 The Nile Valley is like a lotus (flower - tree - wall).
- 8 This land is good (with - for - to) growing crops.
- 9 We walked (along - between - next) the river.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (3)

4 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 1 flow | a a waterway made by humans |
| 2 fertile | b the way water moves |
| 3 river bank | c good land to grow plants and crops |
| 4 wind erosion | d the land along the side of a river |
| 5 canal | e when the wind changes or destroys something |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is a modern city in Lower Egypt. Libya lies to the west of Egypt and Sudan lies to the south. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast. The Fayoum Depression is a very special place, as it's an oasis with the biggest waterfalls in Egypt. It has the huge Wadi El Rayan park, which is home to many birds and animals. There are also fossils of whales! Fayoum has lakes and amazing sights all in one place!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The Nile reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the (south - east - north).
2 There are fossils of (whales - monkeys - lions) in Al Fayoum Depression.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where does Libya lie? ..
4 What is Wadi El Rayan home to? ..

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 a - Egypt - beautiful - is - country - .
2 The - is - Egypt - Nile Delta - in - Lower .
3 spreads - The Nile River - two out into branches .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

MY FAVORITE CLOTHES

Key Vocabulary

robe	ثوب	belt	حزام	spotted	منقط
gloves	قفازات	crown	تاج	striped	مقلّم
costume	زي	pocket	جيب	sleeves	أكمام

Extra Vocabulary

Egyptian	مصري	useful	مفيد	colorful	ملون
information	معلومات	patterns	نقوش	dress	فستان
Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	Eid	العيد	essay	مقال
popular	شعبي - محبوب	kitchen	مطبخ	hidden	مخفي
festival	احتفال - مهرجان	library	مكتبة	wedding	زفاف

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	المضارع	الماضي
borrow يستعير	borrowed	help يساعد	helped
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	protect يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	المضارع	الماضي
wear يرتدي	wore	know يعرف	knew
leave يغادر	left	tell يخبر	told
give يعطي	gave	catch يلاحق - يمسك	caught

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

of course	بالطبع	on her head	على رأسها
look like a princess	تشبه أميرة	on her hands	على يديها
It looks really cool.	تبدو جميلة حقًا.	a special festival	احتفال خاص
made from	مصنوع من	on holiday	في إجازة
good grades	درجات جيدة	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
traditional Egyptian clothes			ملابس مصرية تقليدية

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبًا يا فارس. هل يمكنك أن تساعدني؟ أنا أقوم بمشروع مدرسي عن الملابس المصرية. هل يمكنك أن تعطيني بعض المعلومات؟

Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

مرحبًا بوماس. نعم بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟

Well, what do you usually wear?

حسنًا. ماذا ترتدي عادة؟

I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش في سوهاج. والجو عادة ما يكون حارًا جدًا هنا. اليوم، أنا ارتدي شورت وتي شيرت.

Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

رائع! هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟

Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

أوه، بالتأكيد. حسنًا يرتدي كثير من الرجال الجلابية. وهي عبارة عن ثوب أبيض طويل وهي محبوبة جدًا.

Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

نعم، لقد رأيته. فهي تبدو رائعة حقًا للارتداء.

Fares : Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!

نعم إنها رائعة لأنها مصنوعة من القطن. وهي عادة بيضاء ولكن يمكنك أن تحصل على ألوان أخرى أيضًا. والأكمام طويلة لذلك لا نتعرض لحروق الشمس.

هل بها جيوب؟

Tomas : Are there pockets?

Fares : Yes! But they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside.

نعم! لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.

Tomas : Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

هل ترتدون الجلابيب عند الاحتفال بمهرجان خاص؟

Fares : We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

نعم، والملابس التي نرتديها في العيد على سبيل المثال جميلة جدًا. ويمكن أن تكون الملابس ملونة. وأحيانًا يكون عليها نقوش جميلة.

Tomas : Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

شكرًا فارس. هذا مفيد جدًا!

Read and role-play.

اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



I've got a striped dress. I love it. I wear it to celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

لدي فستان مخطط. أنا أحبه. وأرتديه لأحتفل بشم النسيم.

My favorite thing is my sweater. It's blue and it has a pocket. I wear it when I travel.

الشيء المفضل لدي هو سترتي: إنها زرقاء وبها جيب. وأنا ارتديها عندما أسافر.



Infinitive of purpose

We use (to + infinitive) to express purpose; and to say why someone does something.

نستخدم (المصدر + to) للتعبير عن الغرض ولبيان لماذا يقوم الشخص بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. Why did she go to town?

- She went to town to buy a dress. ذهبت إلى المدينة لكي تشتري فستاناً.

e.g. Why did you go to the hall?

- I went to the hall to get my coat. ذهبت إلى الصالة لكي أحضر معطفي.

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form:

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة (ed, d, t) للفعل المنتظم والمعل غير المنتظم بحفظ كما هو.

play → played go → went

Usage:

e.g. He traveled to Aswan last year.

Mayar made a cake two days ago.

Key words

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
n + (تاريخ ماضي)	في ...	last (week - month - year)		(الأسبوع، الشهر، العام) الماضي	

Negative:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. I didn't play football yesterday.

She didn't go to the zoo last week.

السؤال بـ (هل):

(Yes // No) question:

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. Did you see your friends yesterday?

😊 - Yes, I did.

☹️ - No, I didn't.

السؤال بـ (كيف):

Wh- question

Q.W. + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. Why did you go to your bedroom?

- I went to my bedroom to sleep.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 I went to the library (borrow - to borrow - borrowing) a book.
- 2 Injy used a pen (to write - writing - write) her essay.
- 3 He bought a new suitcase (taking - take - to take) on holiday.
- 4 Malak wears her sunglasses (protect - to protect - protecting) her eyes.
- 5 Basma went to the club to (play - to play - playing) tennis.
- 6 Omar played tennis (yesterday - next week - tomorrow).
- 7 I went to the shop (buy - buying - to buy) some bread.
- 8 I didn't (buy - bought - buys) a racket last week.
- 9 (Do - Did - Are) you meet your friends yesterday?
- 10 Hazem (study - studying - studied) hard to get good grades.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. (استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.)

- Marwa is wearing a striped dress.
- There are two pockets in Marwa's dress.
- Reem looks like a princess.
- Reem has red gloves on her hands.

2 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box. (اقرأ وأكمل الجمل بكلمات من المربع.)

striped - bought - to sleep - cotton

- The galabeya is cool because it's made from
- I've got a dress. I love it very much.
- I went to my bedroom
- We a new car last month.

3 Choose the correct word(s). (اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.)

- I bought some sunglasses (wear - to wear - wears) on holiday.
- We went to the park (playing - play - to play) with our friends.
- Hazem studied hard (gets - get - to get) good grades.
- Tarek (buy - bought - buying) a racket yesterday.
- Basel (don't - didn't - doesn't) take his bag last week.
- Mayar didn't (make - to make - makes) a cake yesterday.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 The sleeves of the | a to take on holiday. |
| 2 She is wearing a | b to catch her train. |
| 3 I bought a suitcase | c galabeya are long. |
| 4 She left the party | d spotted dress with a belt. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences. (اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة.)

- 1 went - I - my - to sleep - bedroom - to - .
- 2 the party - the train - Nayera - to catch - left - .
- 3 town - She - to - a dress - to buy - went - .
- 4 used - to write - an essay - a - He - pen - .

6 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

My favorite dress

Guiding words:

(Marwa - red - belt - pockets)



Lesson (4 / 8)

THE ELVES AND THE SHOEMAKER

Key Vocabulary

kind	عطوف - طيب	honest	أمين	poor	فقير
happy	سعيد	tired	متعب - فرمق	beautiful	جميل
amazing	مذهل	delicious	لذيذ	new	جديد

Extra Vocabulary

elves	الحن - عفاريت	shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	wife	زوجة
town	مدينة صغيرة	amazed	مدهش	workshop	ورشة
enough	كافي	leather	جلد "مدبوغ"	dear	عزيزي
quickly	بسرعة	surprised	متفاجئ	money	نقود
meal	وجبة	perfect	ممتاز - رائع		

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
walk	يمشي walked	cut	يقطع cut
live	يعيش lived	go	يذهب went
call	يتنادي called	say	يقول said
thank	يشكر thanked	pay	يدفع paid
dance	يرقص danced	hide	يخفي hid
arrive	يصل arrived	leave	يغادر - يترك left
believe	يؤمن believed	sit	يجلس sat

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work hard	يعمل بجد	a pair of shoes	زوج من الأحذية
in the morning	في الصباح	try on	يجرب - يقيس
arrive home	يصل البيت	danced around	رقص حول

THE ELVES AND THE SHOEMAKER

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

ذات مرة، كان صانع أحذية طيب وأمين يعيش في المدينة مع زوجته. كانا فقيرين جدًا، ولكنهما كانا سعداء. عمل صانع الأحذية بجد، ولكن لم يكن لديه مال.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

و ذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشته. وقال "يا إلهي، لدي فقط جلد كافي لزوج واحد من الأحذية. ولكنني متعب جدًا لدرجة أنني لا أستطيع صنعهم الليلة. سأقطع الجلد الآن وأصنع الأحذية في الصباح." صانع الأحذية قطع الجلد وذهب إلى الفراش.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.



وفي الصباح التالي، لم يستطع صانع الأحذية أن يصدق عينيه. استدعى زوجته للحضور بسرعة إلى الورشة. قال صانع الأحذية: "انظري إلى هذا الحذاء! هناك، على طاولته كان يوجد زوج رائع من الأحذية. بدت الزوجة مدهشة وقالت: 'إنها جميلة. هل قمت بصنعها؟' قال: 'لا يا عزيزتي، أنا لم أصنعهم'."

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

ثم دخل رجل إلى المحل وقال: "لم أر أبدًا مثل هذا الحذاء المذهل. هل يمكنك أن أجربهم؟" وقام بتجربة الحذاء. قال: "إنها رائعة." ودفع لصانع الأحذية. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية لزوجها: "اذهب بسرعة واشترى المزيد من الجلود." ذهب صانع الأحذية لكي يشتري المزيد من الجلود.

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

و عندما وصل للبيت، كانت زوجة صانع الأحذية قد أعدت له وجبة لذيذة. قال: "سوف أقطع الجلد ثم آتي لأكل." قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد لزوجته وأخذها معه إلى البيت.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."

في اليوم التالي، صانع الأحذية وزوجته كانا مذهولين لرؤية زوجتي أحذية جميلة في ورشة العمل. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "نحن يجب أن نجد من يصنع هذه الأحذية." قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "دعنا نخفي الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا."

That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

في تلك الليلة، صانع الأحذية قطع الجلد ثم اختبأ. كانا متعجبين لرؤية اثنين من الفاتيات! بدأت الفاتيات في صنع الأحذية. في وقت قصير، صنعوا زوجتي أحذية جميلة أخرى. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "نحن يجب أن نشكر الفاتيات." قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "دعنا نجعلهم ملابس جديدة."

The next night, the elves found their new clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

في الليلة التالية، وجدت الفاتيات ملابسهم الجديدة. كانوا سعداء جداً أنهم رقصوا في ورشة العمل قبل الجلوس لصنع المزيد من الأحذية. في وقت قصير، جاء الناس من كل مكان لشراء الأحذية من صانع الأحذية. لم يعد صانع الأحذية وزوجته فقراء مرة أخرى وعاشوا في سعادة دائمة.

Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

1. Was the shoemaker rich?

2. Who were helping the shoemaker?

3. What did the shoemaker and his wife make for the elves?

Lesson

(4 / B)

PRONUNCIATION

How to pronounce (ed) كيف تنطق حرفي (ed) في نهاية الفعل الماضي

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بالأصوات /t/ , /k/ , /p/ ينطق /ed/

want wanted end ended

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /d/ , /t/ , /k/ , /p/ , /b/ , /g/ تنطق /id/

hope hoped laugh laughed

fix fixed wash washed

watch watched like liked

مع بقية الأصوات تنطق /d/

play played clean cleaned

more examples مزيد من الأمثلة

/t/	/k/	/id/
enjoyed	walked	tidied
carried	dressed	studied
lived	worked	needed

Listen and write the verbs in the correct group.

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------------|
| - asked | - counted | - delivered |
| - waited | - carried | - fixed |
| - promised | - slowed | - tasted |

Multiply multi-digit numbers ضرب أعداد متعددة الأرقام

Examples

1 $10 \times 10 = 100$

2 $30 \times 20 = 600$

3 $50 \times 50 = 2500$

4 $38 \times 24 = 912$

Think and do the sums

فكر وحل المسائل.

1 $15 \times 31 =$

2 $20 \times 40 =$

3 $42 \times 20 =$

4 $12 \times 12 =$

A life problem

مسألة كلامية

For sports day, Mrs Mona ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Mona order?

Answer : $12 \times 18 = 216$

Solve the following problem

حل المسألة التالية.

Mona makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks?

Did you know ?

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

إذا قمت بضرب أي رقم في صفر يكون الناتج صفراً



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

money - town - honest - wife

Once upon a time, a kind and (1) shoemaker lived in (2) with his (3). They were poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no (4).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

2 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 He is (rich - poor - wealthy). He has no money.
- 2 I loved this meal. It's (delicious - bad - terrible).
- 3 The shoemaker works in a (ship - hospital - workshop).
- 4 She was very (sad - happy - unhappy). Her son passed the exam.
- 5 Our teacher is (bad - unkind - kind). We all love him.

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

worked - The - hard - shoemaker - .

very - were - poor - They - .

He - with - in - lived - wife - town - his - .

Find the product.

أوجد الناتج.

$20 \times 50 =$

$12 \times 16 =$

$22 \times 33 =$

$15 \times 37 =$

Solve the following problems.

حل المسائل الكلامية الآتية.

Ali bought 15 books. Each book has 80 pages.

How many pages in all?

Nada saw 12 trees. In each tree, there were 22 birds?

How many birds did Nada see in all?

Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

$50 \times 50 =$

a) 600

If you multiply any number by zero,

b) my room.

Yesterday I tidied

c) 2.500

$30 \times 20 =$

d) the answer is zero.

)

2-()

3-()

4-()

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

Ahmed lived in town with his wife dina

Lessons
(5 & 6)

WRITING & PROJECT



Key Vocabulary

tie

كرافطة - رابطة عنق

trousers

بنطلون - بنطال

smart

أنيق

pale

باهت (اللون)

uniform

زي موحد

dark

غامق (اللون)

vest

مديري

student

طالب



Extra Vocabulary

المعردات الإضافية

hat

قبعة

feasts

أعياد

skirt

جيبه

celebrations

احتفالات

jacket

جاكيت

sombrero

السومبريرو (قبعة مكسيكية)

socks

جوارب

shoes

حذاء

gold

ذهب

silver

فضة



Countries

Mexico

المكسيك

Finland

فنلندا

India

الهند

Japan

اليابان



Important expressions and prepositions

have to

يجب ان

pale blue shirt

قميص أزرق باهت

In summer

في الصيف

dark blue trousers

بنطلان أزرق غامق

bright colors

ألوان زاهية

checked skirt

جيبه كاروه

light green shorts

شورت أخضر فاتح

short-sleeved

بالحجم قصير

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Student (A)

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

الطالب A

أنا حقا أحب الزي المدرسي. يرتدي الجميع قميصا أبيض بأكمام قصيرة. وترتدي البنات جيبية زرقاء والاولاد يرتدون بنطالين زرقاء. يجب أن نرتدي جميعا جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء. الطقس ليس باردا جدا هنا لكن عندما يكون باردا نرتدي شترتنا الزرقاء.

Student (B)

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

الطالب B

في المدرسة أرتدي قميصا أزرق فاتحا وبنطالين أزرق داكن. يجب أن نرتدي ربطة عنق كل يوم. البنات في مدرستي أيضا قمصان زرقاء باهتة اللون ولكن لا يرتدين بنطالين. فهم يرتدين تنورة (جيبية) كاروهات ذات لون أبيض و أزرق. ولا يجب عليهن ارتداء رابطة عنق.

Student (C)

Our school uniform is really smart. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

الطالبة C

زي مدرستنا أنيق جدا. يجب أن نرتدي قميصا أبيض وربطة عنق حمراء. و نرتدي جيبية رمادية داكنة و جاكيت أزرق.

Student (D)

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

يرتدي الأولاد والبنات أزياء مختلفة في مدرستي. يرتدي الأولاد شورت أخضر فاتح وجوارب خضراء طويلة. نرتدي قمصانا بيضاء ولدينا سترات حمراء داكنة عندما يكون الطقس باردا. زي أختي مختلف. فهي ترتدي جيبية زرقاء وتي شيرت أصفر.

Student (E)

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

الطالب E

نرتدي البنات في مدرستي جيبية زرقاء داكنة والاولاد يرتدون شورت أزرق غامق. وقميصا قطنيا أزرق باهت. وجوارب ابيض وحذاء اسود. عندما يكون الطقس باردا نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت. أحب الزي الخاص بي!

اقرأ ثانية واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ. Read again and write (T) True or (F) False

- 1 At student A's school, students wear black leather shoes.
- 2 At student B's school, the boys wear a blue and white checked skirt.
- 3 The boys at student D's school wear long green socks.

Order of adjective

ترتيب الصفات

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way:

عند وصف شيء بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نراعي ترتيب الصفات كالتالي :



e.g. I have a **small** **new** **white** **cotton** T-shirt.

Study the following table.

ادرس هذا الجدول (الاحظ ترتيب الصفات)

1- size	→ big	small - ضخم	صغير
2- age	→ old	new - قديم	جديد
3- color	→ black	white - أسود	أبيض
4- material	→ cotton	linen - قطن	كتان

e.g. 1- She wore a **green** **cotton** dress.
2- He had to wear an **old** **orange** hat.
3- Dad bought a **new** **white** galabeya.

Put the following adjectives in the correct order

I bought a **(black - big - new)** racket.
He sold his **(old - white - small)** car.
She wears a **(green - new - small)** dress.
The shoemaker made **(small - leather - new)** shoes.

Unit (3) - How do I look?

Help your child order the adjectives.

ساعد طفلك بترتيب الصفات.

Lesson (5&6)

انظر واقرأ.

Look and read.

CLOTHES IN MEXICO

These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.



ترتدي الفتيات في المكسيك مثل هذه الفساتين أثناء الأعياد والاحتفالات.

Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

تحب الفتيات المكسيكيات الألوان الزاهية. حتى عندما لا يحتفلون، فإنهم يرتدون ملابس ملونة زاهية.



People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero - it's a traditional Mexican hat.



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.



Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية

- Which country are the texts about?
- Why do the Mexicans wear hats?
- What is the Mexican hat called?

Help your child read about clothes in Mexico.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الملابس في المكسيك.



Activities

Lessons (5&6)

1 Read and match.

- The dresses are short-sleeved white shirt.
 Mexican girls an old orange hat.
 He had to wear love bright colors.
 Everyone wears a very colorful.
- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

2 Choose the correct word(s).

- We have to wear a (tie - bag - book) every day.
 Our school uniform is really (ugly - smart - bad). We like it.
 I bought a (green new - white new - new green) jacket.
 My favorite (clothes - colors - sports) are the shirt and trousers.
 My favorite (color - subject - size) is blue.

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- Mexico - hats - wear - People - in .
 like - uniform - I - school - really - our - .
 girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love - .

اقرأ وامل.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 At school I wear a pale blue (shirt - shorts - shoes).
 2 We have to wear a (hat - tie - dress) every day.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Do the girls have to wear a tie?
 4 What color is the tie?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من ٥ جمل.

My school uniform

Guiding words:

boys shirt socks trousers girls tie blue shirt



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (3)



How do I look?

d

played
enjoyed
cleaned

t

asked
promised
fixed

rd

waited
tidied
tasted

She went to town to buy a sweater.
I bought some sunglasses to wear on holiday.

Math

$$10 \times 10 = 100$$

$$12 \times 20 = 240$$

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

اكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Egypt

beautiful - Nile - Cairo - places - waterfalls

Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. There are many amazing places in Egypt. Al Fayoum has the biggest waterfalls in Egypt. I love Egypt so much.

My school uniform

shirt - shorts - trousers - socks - sweaters

I'm Sara. I'm in primary five. I like my school uniform. We wear a short-sleeved white shirt and black trousers. We wear white socks and black shoes. When it is cold, we wear our blue sweaters.

A trip to Al Fayoum

family - visit - uncle - pack - pool - sunglasses

I'll go to Al Fayoum with my family tomorrow. We'll visit my uncle Ali and cousins. We need to pack our suitcases. I'll take my swimming shorts to swim in the pool. I'll take my sunglasses. It will be very sunny. I can't wait to go there and see them.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	نظارة شمسية		بيجامة
	قلادة		سترة - بلوفر
	حقيرة سفر		مقلم
	كوفية		منقط
	حذاء رياضي		بارد - لطيف

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	جبل		جبل ثلج
	فيضان		شلالات
	صحراء		كثبان رملية
	دلتا النيل		وادي النيل
	خضبة		ضفة النهر
	منحوتات		التعرية بالرياح

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	أكمام		قفازات
	جيوب		زى
	حزام		ثوب

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	لطيف		مذهل
	أمين		لذيذ
	فقير		عقاريت - جن

Lessons (5 - 8)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	زى مدرسي		أنيق
	أكمام قصيرة		قميص ذو مربعات (كاروهات)
	رابطة عنق		بنطال - بنطلون

Activities on Unit (3)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Omar lives in Sohag.
- Many people wear shorts.
- The galabeya is a long white robe.
- The galabeya has short sleeves.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

(lotus - Valley - banks - crops)

The Nile (1) is the area of land on the (2) of the Nile River. It is very good for growing (3) like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a (4) flower.

3 Choose the correct word(s). اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- I went to the library (borrow - to borrow - to borrowing) a book.
- He (go - goes - went) to the beach yesterday.
- It's very cold, so I'll take my (sweater - shorts - sunglasses).
- She's wearing a (spot - spots - spotted) skirt.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (3)

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.
اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1 go - I - wait - to - can't - to - Al Fayoum - .

2 The Red - lies - on - east - Sea - Egypt's - coast - .

3 wearing - Sara - a spotted - is - dress - .

4 uniform - Ourschool - is - smart - really - .

5 Read and match

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 "Flow" means | a our suitcases for holiday. |
| 2 We need to pack | b to play with our friends. |
| 3 The galabeya has | c the way water moves. |
| 4 We went to the park | d long sleeves. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

6 Read the following text and answer the questions
اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In Egypt's White Desert, you can see some amazing sculptures. How did they get there? They were made by the wind. There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago. Over time, the wind blows sand and small stones against the rocks. The rocks change shape. After many years, the wind and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The (water - wind - ice) and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures.
- 2 The rocks change (color - size - shape).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where is the White Desert?

4 Were there any sculptures millions of years ago?

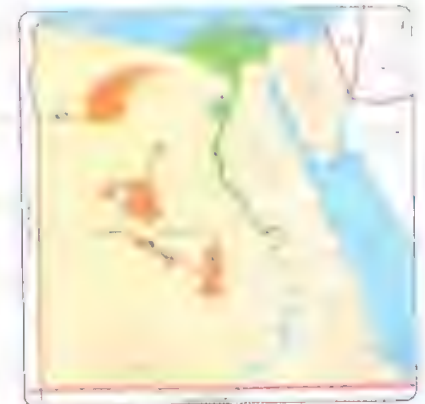
7 Look and write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences

انظر واكتب فقرة من ٥ جمل.

Egypt

Guiding words:

country Africa Capital Nile amazing Delta waterfalls



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

8 Punctuate the following.

⇒ cairo is the capital of egypt

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BALAH

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.



Hi, I'm Maisie. I'm from Canada and I love my country. I'm going to tell you some special things about it. Here we go!

Canada is north of North America and its capital is Ottawa. It's the second largest country in the world, after Russia. It has a really cool red and white flag with a maple leaf on it.

مرحبًا، أنا مايسي. أنا من كندا وأحب بلدي. سأخبركم ببعض الأشياء المميزة عنها. هيا بنا! تقع كندا في شمال أمريكا الشمالية وعاصمتها أوتاوا. وهي ثاني أكبر دولة في العالم، بعد روسيا. ولها علم أحمر وأبيض رائع جدًا مع ورقة قيقب عليه.

Totem poles, which are sculptures, are very important to us. You can find them around Canada. They are about families in each place and tell stories about the people who live there. They are painted in bright colors, and are art, history, and a story all together!



تعتبر أعمدة الطوطم، وهي منحوتات، هامة جدًا بالنسبة لنا. يمكنك العثور عليها في جميع أنحاء كندا. إنها عن العائلات في كل مكان ويحكون قصصًا عن الأشخاص الذين يعيشون هناك. وهي مطلية بألوان زاهية وهي فن وتاريخ وقصة مغا.

Here in Canada, we have lots of different landscapes and climates. Some parts of Canada are very cold. Some are warm. I love Canada's bears – they live in the cold woods and they're very beautiful. But they're a bit scary because they're very big, and sometimes very hungry!

هنا في كندا، لدينا الكثير من المناظر الطبيعية والمناخات المختلفة. بعض أجزاء كندا شديد البرودة. وبعضها دافئ. أنا أحب الدببة الكندية - إنها تعيش في الغابة الباردة وهي رائعة جدًا. ولكنها مخيفة بعض الشيء لأنها ضخمة جدًا، وأحيانًا جائعة جدًا!

Help your child read about Canada.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن كندا.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 143

Non-Fiction Reader

Come To Canada!

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

totem pole
عمود الطوطم (رمز العائلة)maple leaf
ورقة نبات القيقبmaple syrup
شراب نبات القيقبbear
دب

Extra Vocabulary

Russia
history
landscapes
climate
woods

روسيا pancakes
التاريخ awesome
مناظر طبيعية wide brim
المناخ warm
غابة quite

فطائر - بانكيك
رائع
حافة عريضة
دافئ
تمامًا - إلى حد ما

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

special things about
a bit scary
for breakfast
one more thing
on special days
first of all

أشياء مميزة عن
مخيف قليلًا
على الإفطار
شيء آخر
أيام مميزة
بادئ ذي بدء / أولاً

The last thing I wanted to tell you about is maple syrup: it's sweet and very nice, and we eat it on pancakes for breakfast a lot. You have to try it!

So that's my amazing country! Tell me about your country and what you love about it.



آخر شيء أردت أن أخبرك عنه هو شراب القيقب: إنه حلو وجميل للغاية، ونحن نأكله مع الفطائر على الإفطار كثيرًا. عليك أن تجربته.
هذا هو بلدي المذهل! أخبرني عن بلدك وما الذي تحبه فيها.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Hi, it's Maisie again! One more thing I want to tell you about is our police. They're very kind and help keep us all safe. They have an awesome uniform, too – they wear it on special days.

مرحبًا، أنا مايسي مرة أخرى! شيء آخر أريد أن أخبركم عنه وهو شرطتنا. إنهم لطفاء جدًا ويساعدون في الحفاظ على سلامتنا جميعًا. ولديهم زي رائع أيضًا - ويرتدونه في الأيام (المميزة) الخاصة.

First of all, they wear a light brown leather hat. It has a wide brim to protect their faces from the sun. Then, they have a beautiful red jacket with a dark brown leather belt and long dark brown leather gloves. Their pants are dark blue and have a yellow stripe down the side. Their boots are dark brown leather, too.

بادئ ذي بدء، إنهم يرتدون قبعة جلدية بنية فاتحة. ولها حافة عريضة لحماية وجوههم من أشعة الشمس. وبعد ذلك، لديهم سترة حمراء جميلة بها حزام جلدي بني داكن وقفازات جلدية بنية داكنة طويلة. وينطالهم أزرق غامق وله شريط أصفر أسفل الجانب. وأحذيتهم من الجلد البني الغامق أيضًا.



On normal days, their uniform is quite different – they wear a gray shirt, dark blue pants, and a hat. In the colder parts of Canada, they wear a very thick coat to keep warm.

في الأيام العادية، يكون زيهم مختلفًا تمامًا - فهم يرتدون قميصًا رماديًا وبنطالًا أزرقًا داكنًا وقبعة. وفي الأجزاء الأكثر برودة من كندا، يرتدون معطفًا سميكًا جدًا للتدفئة.

Help your child read about Canada.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن كندا.

Activities on Units (1 - 3)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Harmful chemicals go into rivers and seas. ☐
- 2 Water pollution can't kill organisms. ☐
- 3 It can kill birds that eat the fish. ☐
- 4 Animals don't lose their homes. ☐

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sun - chain - plants - energy

The food (1) shows how plants and animals get their (2) At the start of the chain, we can see (3) They get energy from the (4) Animals get their energy by eating plants and other animals.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ ووصل.

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1 The sun provides | a 0.20 |
| 2 How about | b a glass building used for growing plants. |
| 3 $1 \div 5 =$ | c energy for plants to grow. |
| 4 A greenhouse is | d buying some grapes? |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 Would you like (a - some - any) coffee?
- 2 We go to school (learn - learning - to learn).
- 3 Farmers (grow - draw - has) onions and potatoes.
- 4 In the White Desert you can see some amazing (statues - sculptures - pyramids).

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football. Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Exercise is (bad - good - harmful) for you.
- 2 We could play games with (teachers - friends - doctors).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why should we eat fruit and vegetables?
- 4 How could you go to school to be healthy?

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 playing - I'm - good - football - at - .
- 2 healthy - your - What's - food - favorite - ?
- 3 go - Let's - the club - later - to - .
- 4 capital - Cairo - the - is - Egypt - of - .

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

water pollution

Guiding words:


chemicals - rivers - organisms - crabs - homes - habitats



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

8 Punctuate the following.

⇒ what s your favorite sport



Theme (2) Myself and others

Unit (4)

Looking after our world

العناية بالعالم

In this unit the student will

- listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
- learn about Elephantine Island.
- use sentences in the past continuous.
- learn about greenhouse gases and climate change.
- learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- learn about number sequences.
- learn how to say three consonants together.
- learn to correct spelling mistakes.
- read and listen to a short story about a community garden.
- write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.

Lesson (1)

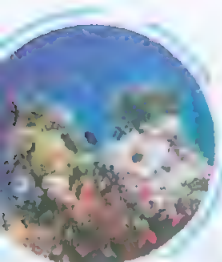
MY VISIT TO ELEPHANTINE ISLAND

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



mountain
جبل



coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية



island
جزيرة



Landscapes
مناظر طبيعية



forest
غابة



waterfall
شلال



lake
بحيرة

Lesson (1)

Places in Egypt (أماكن في مصر)



Alexandria
مدينة الإسكندرية



Dahab
مدينة دهب



Nubian village
قرية نوبية

Extra Vocabulary

sunset	غروب الشمس	shape	شكل	town	مدينة صغيرة
decorated	مُزَيَّن - مُزَخَرَف	beautiful	جميل	village	قرية
calendar	تقويم - (نتيجة حائط)	fantastic	رائع	tombs	مقابر
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	museum	متحف	reign	عهد - فترة حكم
particularly	بطريقة خاصة	traffic	حركة المرور	felucca	ملوكة
Elephantine Island			جزيرة الفنتين	rare	نادر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
walk يمشي	walked	understand يفهم	understood
decorate يزين	decorated	find يجد	found
wait ينتظر	waited	see يرى	saw

Important expressions and prepositions

travel by	يسافر بواسطة	in fact	في الحقيقة
full of	مليء بـ	look at	ينظر إلى
lots of	كثير من	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Hi Dalia!
 How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see.
 Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. - we think it's the shape!
 Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.
 In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.
 But it's not only about history - it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks.



مرحبًا داليا!
 كيف حالك؟ أفتقدك كثيرًا. أنا في جزيرة إلفنتين إنها المكان الأكثر روعة. إنها في أسوان وهناك الكثير لرؤيته. بالأمس كنت مسافرًا بالقطعة إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائي كنا نحاول فهم اسم إلفنتين. نعتقد أنه الشكل!
 جزيرة إلفنتين هي أقدم مكان في أسوان. في الواقع كل الجزيرة مليئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. كنا ننظر إلى كل الأشياء القديمة من الجزيرة عندما وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا من عهد تحتمس الثالث.
 لكن الأمر لا يتعلق بالتاريخ فقط - إنه مكان جميل وهادئ حيث لا توجد حركة مرور لذلك فهي هادئة جدًا والهواء نقي. نستطيع الخروج

There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.

I can't wait to see you soon!

agwa

لا توجد غابات ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشجار، لذا فهي خضراء تمامًا. منظر غروب الشمس فيها رائع خاصة من القلوة.
 كنا نتمشى في إحدى القرى النوبية هذا الصباح ولديهم منازل جميلة مزينة. تناولنا العشاء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل. غداً هو آخر صباح لنا في أسوان.
 هناك، لذلك قررنا أن نمشي لمقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سأكون حزينًا جدًا عند المغادرة.
 أتشوق لرؤيتك قريبًا!
 نجوى

Help your child listen and read.



Activities

1 Complete the missing parts in the following dialog.

أكمل الأجزاء الناقصة في الحوار الآتي.

Ali : (1) ?

Omar : I went to Aswan.

Ali : (2) ?

Omar : I went by train.

Ali : (3) ?

Omar : I visited the Elephantine Island.

Ali : Did you enjoy your time?

Omar : (4) .

اقرأ وصل.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Elephantine Island is | a brightly decorated houses. |
| 2 We can go for long walks | b and the air is clean. |
| 3 Aswan is very quiet, | c full of history. |
| 4 They have beautiful | d on Elephantine Island. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

3 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1 Elephantine Island is full of (history - art - science).

2 We found a very rare calendar from the (rain - reign - row) of Thutmose III.

3 I was traveling by (boat - foot - metro) to the island.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- 1 Aswan has a (boat - plant - botanical) garden.
 2 There are a lot of coral (leaves - beef - reefs) in the sea.
 3 The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a (felucca - car - bus) on the Nile.

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.
 اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

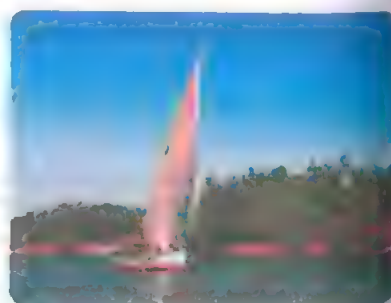
- 1 a beautiful - Aswan - is - calm - and - place - .
 2 by traveling - I - boat - was - to - island - the - .
 3 went - Yesterday - we - the - to - Aswan Museum - .
 4 Nagwa - have - Did - trip - a good - ?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.
 انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

A visit to Elephantine Island

Guiding words:

Elephantine Island - oldest - part - boat - shape



Lesson (2 / 8)

What were you doing?

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Form:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + (verb + ing)
 You / We / They / اسم جمع + were + (verb + ing)

- e.g. I was listening to the radio.
 We were swimming in the sea.
 We were playing football when Tom fell down.

Usage:

- We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

نستخدم الماضي المستمر ليدل على شيء حدث واستمر لفترة زمنية في الماضي.

e.g. She was sleeping at 6 am yesterday.

- To talk about something that was happening and interrupted.

يستخدم ليعبر عن شيء كان يحدث وتم قطعه (بحدث آخر).

e.g. I was walking in the street when I found a pen.

Key words

While

While → past continuous (ماضي مستمر) , past simple (ماضي بسيط)

e.g. While I **was cooking**, my brother **came**.

When

When → past simple (ماضي بسيط) , past continuous (ماضي مستمر)

e.g. When my brother **came**, I **was cooking**.

Negative:

النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was not** + (wasn't) (verb + ing)
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **were not** + (weren't)

e.g. We **weren't watching** TV yesterday morning.

Yes/No question:

سؤال نعم/لا

Was + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing) ...?

Were + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing) ...?

e.g. Was he **swimming** in the lake?

Wh questions:

سؤال ماذا/من/أين/متى

Q.W. + **was** + subject + (verb + ing)
were

e.g. What **was** he **doing** yesterday evening?

Tip!

Don't forget how to make the -ing form. If the verb ends with:

لا تنس كيفية تكوين شكل "ing" عند انتهاء الفعل:

make → making

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف "e" نحذفه عند إضافة "ing"

take → taking

إذا انتهى الفعل (بساكن + متحرك + ساكن) نكرر الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف "ing"

swim → swimming

shop → shopping

Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 I (are - was - were) listening to the radio in the morning.
- 2 We were (make - makes - making) a cake yesterday morning.
- 3 She (was - were - am) swimming in the sea.
- 4 Was (we - they - he) listening to music?
- 5 Were they (sleeps - sleeping - sleep) at 6 am?
- 6 The fish was (swimming - swim - swam) in the sea.
- 7 The tiger (was - were - are) drinking water.
- 8 Were you (have - having - has) breakfast when your brother came?
- 9 (Was - Were - Are) the cat running?
- 10 What were you (do - does - doing) at 3 pm yesterday?
- 11 We were (have - having - has) a great time in Alexandria.
- 12 At 8 am she (were - was - be) arriving at school.
- 13 At 10 am I was (study - studying - studies) English.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / B)

READING: CLIMATE CHANGE

Key Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

climate change	تغير المناخ	suitable	مناسب
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري	atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي
livestock farming	تربية الماشية	blanket	طبقة - غطاء
greenhouse effect	تأثير الاحتباس الحراري	normal	طبيعي - عادي

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات

temperature	درجة حرارة	important	مهم	planet	كوكب
tropical plants	نباتات استوائية	scientists	علماء	heat	يسخن / حرارة
water vapor	بخار الماء	surface	سطح	space	فضاء
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	methane	غاز الميثان	crops	محاصيل
cause	سبب - يسبب	result	نتيجة	nature	الطبيعة
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	difficult	صعب	library	مكتبة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
change	يغير / changed	cause	يسبب / caused
produce	ينتج / produced	stop	يوقف / stopped
die	يموت / died	explain	يفسر - يوضح / explained
allow	يسمح / allowed	happen	يحدث / happened
work	يعمل / worked	help	يساعد / helped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think	يعتقد / thought	lose	يفقد - يخسر / lost
rise	يرتفع / rose	become	يصبح / became
feel	يشعر / felt	mean	يعني / meant
shine	يسطع / shone	get	يحصل - يحصل / got

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a long period of time	فترة طويلة من الزمن
inside the Earth	داخل الأرض
stop from	يمنع من
go back to	يعود (يرجع) إلى
go up	يرتفع
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟
I'm feeling worried.	أشعر بالقلق.
quite difficult	صعب إلى حد ما
(be) made of	مصنوع من
work like	يعمل مثل
go out of	يخرج من



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Climate Change تغير المناخ

Greenhouse gases are important to keep our planet at the suitable temperature for life. One hundred years ago, the Earth was getting a little warmer, and the **atmosphere** was changing a little. But over the **past 20 years**, changes are happening faster and faster.



غازات الاحتباس الحراري مهمة لأنها تبقى الأرض في درجة حرارة مناسبة للحياة. منذ مائة عام كانت درجة حرارة الأرض تزداد بشكل قليل و الغلاف الجوي متغير قليلاً. ولكن على مدار العشرين عامًا الماضية بدأت التغيرات تحدث بشكل أسرع وأسرع. Scientists think that people are causing climate change - a change to the **normal** weather of the Earth over a long period of time. We produce too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation, building things, and **livestock farming**. The greenhouse gases now keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth, and stop this heat from going back to the space. So the Earth's temperature goes up.

ويعتقد العلماء أن الناس يتسببون في تغير المناخ- (في الطقس الطبيعي للأرض خلال فترة زمنية طويلة). فنحن نقوم بإنتاج الكثير من غازات الاحتباس الحراري من خلال المصانع والمواصلات ومواد البناء وتربية الماشية. وتقوم غازات الاحتباس الحراري بحبس المزيد من حرارة الشمس داخل الأرض وتمنع رجوع هذه الحرارة إلى الفضاء. لذلك فإن

Greenhouse gases are gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor, and methane. So what are the results of climate change?

- Animals may lose their food because plants die.
- Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes.
- The climate becomes too hot. We don't have enough rain and our crops can't grow.

غازات الاحتباس الحراري هي غازات مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون و بخار الماء وغاز الميثان. إذن ماهي النتائج المترتبة على التغير المناخي؟

- يمكن أن تفقد الحيوانات طعامها بسبب موت النباتات.
- يرتفع مستوي سطح البحر و يمكن أن يفقد الناس منازلهم.
- يصبح المناخ شديد الحرارة وليس لدينا مطر كاف وبالتالي فإن المحاصيل لا يمكن أن تنمو.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mom : Laila, what's the matter? ما الأمر يا ليلي؟

Laila : Hi Mom. I'm feeling worried. I can't do my homework. أهلاً يا أمي. أشعر بالقلق لأنني لا أستطيع عمل واجبي المدرسي.

Mom : What's the problem? ما المشكلة؟

Laila : I have to explain the greenhouse effect and it's quite difficult. يجب علي أن أشرح تأثير الاحتباس الحراري وهو صعب تماماً.

Mom : OK, let me help. You know what a **greenhouse** is, don't you? It's made of glass so it keeps all the plants inside it warm. This means that in cold countries, we can grow vegetables like tomatoes and tropical plants. The temperature inside doesn't change and the plants grow.

حسناً، دعيني أساعدك. انتي تعرفين الصوبة الزراعية، أليس كذلك؟ إنها مصنوعة من الزجاج ولذا فهي تحافظ على حرارة النباتات داخلها. وهذا معناه أنه في البلاد الباردة نستطيع زراعة خضروات مثل الطماطم والنباتات الاستوائية. لأن درجة الحرارة بالداخل لا تتغير و تنمو النباتات.

Laila : Yes, but why is that the same as climate change? نعم، ولكن لم هذا هو نفس تغير المناخ؟

Mom : Well, we have a natural greenhouse effect on Earth. There are gases in the atmosphere that keep the Earth warm so we can live on it. These are greenhouse gases. But now we have more and more of the greenhouse gases and the Earth is warming up too much.

حسناً، لدينا تأثير احتباس حراري طبيعي على الأرض. وتوجد غازات في الغلاف الجوي تحافظ على حرارة الأرض لكي نتمكن من العيش عليها. وهذه تسمى غازات الاحتباس الحراري. ولكن لدينا الآن المزيد والمزيد من غازات الاحتباس الحراري والأرض تزداد حرارة.

Laila : But why is it like a greenhouse? ولكن لم يشبه ذلك الصوبة الزراعية؟

Mom : The greenhouse gases work like a blanket around Earth. Greenhouse gases allow the sun's light to shine onto the Earth's surface, but they stop the heat of the sun from going out of the Earth to space, and they make the planet too hot.

تعمل غازات الاحتباس الحراري مثل طبقة حول الأرض. وتسمح غازات الاحتباس الحراري للشمس بأن تسطع على سطح الأرض، ولكنها تمنع خروج حرارة الشمس من الأرض إلى الفضاء مما يجعل كوكب الأرض شديد الحرارة.

Laila : Thanks, Mom! I understand the greenhouse effect better now!

شكراً يا أمي أنا افهم تأثير الاحتباس الحراري بشكل أفضل الآن!

What is the 'greenhouse effect'?

ما هو تأثير "الاحتباس الحراري"؟

A process in which greenhouse gases stop the sun's heat from going from Earth to space and raises the Earth's temperature.

عملية تسمى الاحتباس الحراري، حيث تمنع الغازات الدفيئة حرارة الشمس من الذهاب من الأرض إلى الفضاء و ترفع درجة حرارة الأرض.

Answer the following questions.

What things that cause climate change?

What are the results of climate change?

Does Egypt have climate change? How?

What does Laila have to explain?

What are greenhouse gases?



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Scientists think that people are causing climate change. ☐
- We produce too many greenhouse gases. ☐
- The greenhouse gases keep the sun's heat inside the Earth. ☐
- The Earth's temperature goes down. ☐

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

transportation - climate - clean - warmer

Anas : What were you doing this morning?

Ali : I was reading about (1) change.

Anas : What does it mean?

Ali : It means that the Earth is becoming 2

Anas : What causes climate change?

Ali : Factories and (3)

Anas : How can we help?

Ali : We should keep the Earth (4)

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Greenhouse gases work as | a food because plants die. |
| Animals may lose their | b can lose their homes. |
| A greenhouse is | c a blanket around Earth. |
| Sea level rises, so people | d made of glass. |
| 1- () | 2- () |
| 3- () | 4- () |

4 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- Greenhouse gases make the Earth *warmer*.
- (Engineers - Scientists - Doctors) think that people are causing climate change.

- Factories - Schools - Gardens) produce too many greenhouse gases.
- The greenhouse gases keep the (moon's - star's - sun's) heat inside the Earth.
- A greenhouse is made of (glass - wood - metal).
- The greenhouse gases work like a (shirt - blanket - jacket) around Earth.
- The greenhouse gases (let - allow - stop) the heat from going back to the space.
- The atmosphere (was - were - are) changing a little.

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

watching - I - everyone - was - the - in - park - .

keeps - The - greenhouse - plants - warm - .

becomes - The - too - climate - hot - .

gases - There - are - greenhouse - atmosphere - the - in - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ why is it like a greenhouse

Lesson (3 / A)

ECO-TOURISM

السياحة البيئية



Key Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	journey	رحلة
local people	السكان المحليون	wildlife	الحياة البرية
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	environment	بيئة



Extra Vocabulary

الكلمات الإضافية

important	هام / مهم	exciting	مثير
local	محلي	project	مشروع
eco-tourists	السياح المحافظون على البيئة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
culture	ثقافة	natural	طبيعي
monuments	أثار	job	وظيفة
historical	تاريخي	pollution	تلوث



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
create	يبتكر created	give	يعطي gave
preserve	يحافظ على preserved	pay	يدفع paid
damage	يتلف damaged	learn	يتعلم learnt
stay	يمكنث - يقيم stayed	come	يأتي came
travel	يسافر traveled	think	يعتقد thought
cause	يتسبب caused	tell	يخبر told



Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر هامة

travel **by** plane

That sounds good!

look **after**

يعتني بـ

learn **about**

يتعلم عن

stay **in**

يقيم في

on **foot**

سيرًا على الأقدام

Tip!

"Eco" means relating to the environment.

كلمة (Eco) تعني له علاقة بالبيئة.

Tourism:



Tourism is very important to Egypt.

السياحة مهمة جدًا لمصر.

But it has some good and bad things.

ولكن لها بعض الجوانب الجيدة والجوانب السيئة.

Good things

It gives jobs for local people.

تقدم وظائف للسكان المحليين.

It helps people learn about new cultures.

تساعد الناس أن يتعلموا عن الثقافات الأخرى.

Bad things

It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.

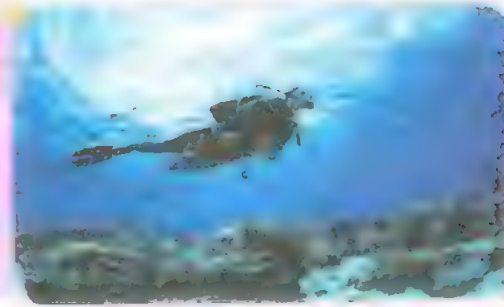
تحدث الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون الناتج عن الرحلات الجوية.

It damages the natural environment.

تضر بالبيئة الطبيعية.

It damages historical places or monuments.

تضر بالأمكن التاريخية أو الآثار.



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef.

سائح يغوص في البحر الأحمر بالقرب من الشعاب المرجانية



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village.

تربة واحدة سبوه السياحية النافعة لبيوسكو.

- What are the pros and cons of eco-tourism?

ما هي مميزات وعيوب السياحة البيئية؟

Pros

مزايا

Cons

عيوب

It helps the environment.

تساعد البيئة

It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.

ليست مريحة كالسياحة الطبيعية.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Presenter : Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?

مرحبًا، شريف. شكرًا لقدمك للتحدث معنا. شريف مرشد سياحي في الغردقة. أخبرنا عن السياحة البيئية من فضلك ما هي؟

Sherif : Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

مرحبًا داليا. السياحة البيئية مثيرة للغاية. إنها السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

Presenter : How does it help the environment and people?

كيف تساعد البيئة والناس؟

Sherif : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

لا يحبون السفر بالطائرة لأنهم يسيرون، أو يركبون القطار، أو يمشون. لأنهم لا يحبون التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات.

Presenter : I see. Where do they stay? فهمت. أين يقيمون؟

Sherif : They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

إنهم لا يحبون الفنادق الكبيرة. ويقيمون في فنادق صغيرة محلية أو يدفعون للإقامة في منازل الناس.

Presenter : What do they do when they travel? ماذا يفعلون عندما يسافرون؟

Sherif : They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

إنهم يحبون تعلم المزيد عن مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

Presenter : Can you give me an example? هل يمكنك إعطائي مثالاً؟

Sherif : Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

بالطبع. هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشروعات الرائعة جدًا في البحر الأحمر، للحفاظ على الشعاب المرجانية والحيوانات البحرية. يأتي السياح إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون أين يمكنهم الغوص وكيف يتعاملون مع الحيوانات.

Presenter : That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

هذا يبدو رائعًا جدًا! شكرًا على وقتك يا شريف.

Number sequences.

المتتالية العددية.

What's a number sequence?

ما هي المتتالية العددية؟

A number sequence is a list of numbers that are linked by a rule. If you work out the rule, you can find the next number in the sequence. Look:

1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15

The difference between each number is 2. So the rule is to add 2 to each number. Now you can work out the next number in the sequence: $15 + 2 = 17$.

المتتالية العددية هي قائمة من الأرقام المرتبطة بقاعدة. إذا استنبطت القاعدة، يمكنك أن تجد الرقم التالي في التسلسل. مثل 1 - 3 - 5 - 7 - 9 - 11 - 13 - 15.

الفرق بين كل رقم هو (2) إذاً القاعدة أن تضيف (2) لكل رقم. والآن يمكنك أن تستنبط الرقم التالي وهو (17).

★ Try This:

Houses in Nubian villages are numbered like this: 2 4 6 8

What are the next 4 numbers?

1 Write the numbers to complete the rule.

اكتب الأرقام لتكمل القاعدة.

1 4 8 12 16 20 24

Rule: add

2 3 10 17 24 31 38

Rule: add

3 1 9 17 25 33 41

Rule: add

Help your child identify number sequence.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على المتتالية العددية.

Help your child listen to a dialog about eco-tourism.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى حوار عن السياحة البيئية.

Listen and read.

The Fibonacci sequence متتالية فيبوناتشي

The Fibonacci sequence is a series of numbers in which each number is the sum of the two that precede it.

متتالية فيبوناتشي هي مجموعة من أعداد يكون كل رقم فيها هو حاصل جمع الرقمين السابقين له في المتتالية. Starting at 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34. And so on forever.

تبدأ هكذا: 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34. وتستمر إلى ما لا نهاية.

Fibonacci was a famous Italian mathematician. He noticed a number sequence that was very useful for math and other sciences. Because he was the first to talk about this sequence, it took his name. It's called 'the Fibonacci sequence'.

In this sequence, you find the next number if you add the two previous numbers together:

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, ...

فيبوناتشي عالم رياضيات إيطالي مشهور. لاحظ متتالية عددية كانت مفيدة جدًا لمادة الرياضيات والعلوم الأخرى، و لأنه كان الأول الذي تحدث عن هذه المتتالية. فقد سُميت باسمه. فهي تسمى متتالية

فيبوناتشي

في هذه المتتالية تجد الرقم التالي إذا أضفت الرقمين السابقين معًا: 0 - 1 - 1 - 2 - 3 - 5 - 8 - 13.

Look and read. Write the next three numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.

انظر واقرأ. اكتب ثلاثة أرقام في متتالية فيبوناتشي.

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, , , ,

2 Write the next two numbers in each sequence.

اكتب الرقمين التاليين لكل متتالية.

- 1 12 15 18 21 24 27
- 2 20 30 40 50
- 3 11 20 29 38
- 4 3 8 13 18
- 5 20 31 42 53

A number sequence can go up (= we add numbers +) or down (= we subtract numbers -):

10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 (add 2)

24 22 20 18 16 14 12 10 (subtract 2)

المتتالية العددية يمكن أن تكون لأعلى تصاعدياً (نضيف أرقاماً) أو لأسفل تنازلياً (نطرح أرقاماً).

3 Write the missing numbers in each sequence as the example.

اكتب الأرقام الناقصة في كل متتالية كالمثال:

- 1 85 80 75 70 65 60
- 2 25 30 40 45
- 3 30 50 70 110
- 4 50 42 38 30
- 5 28 48 58 78
- 6 50 45 40 35



Activities

1 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل بكلمات من المربع.

coral - dive - environment - hotels - wildlife - pollution

- 1 Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the and helps local people.
- 2 Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the that planes cause.
- 3 They stay in small, local or pay to stay in people's houses.
- 4 They like to learn about local projects and local culture.
- 5 Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the reefs.
- 6 Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 Eco-tourists like to travel by (planes - rockets - bikes).
- 2 Eco-tourists pay to stay in (people's houses - zoos - villages).
- 3 Eco-tourists like to learn about (local - city - word) wildlife projects and local culture.
- 4 Tourism gives (food - jobs - sports) for local people.
- 5 Tourism helps people learn (at - by - about) new cultures.
- 6 Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the (solution - pollution - lotion) that planes cause.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 Tourism creates too much carbon | a coral reefs in the Red Sea. |
| 2 Eco-tourism helps | b dioxide from plane journeys. |
| 3 Tourism gives jobs | c the environment. |
| 4 There are a lot of | d for local people. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 looks - after - Eco-tourism - environment - the - .
- 2 like - travel - Eco-tourists - to - bike - by - .
- 3 to - many - very - is - Tourism - important - countries - .
- 4 think - do - What - you - eco-tourism - of - ?

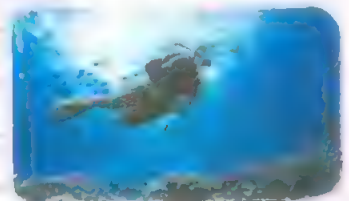
5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Guiding words:

Eco-tourism

(important - helps - jobs - planes - hotels)



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

6 Punctuate the following.

⇒ eco-tourism is an exciting idea in egypt

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4 / A)

PRONUNCIATION

Three consonant clusters

أصوات ساكنة متتالية

Some words are hard to say because there are three consonants together.

بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق وذلك لسبب وجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها.

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

scr-



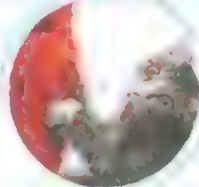
screen
شاشة



scream
صرخ



screw
مسامير (مائلوطة)



scratch
خدش، خدش

str-



street
شارع



strong
قوي



strawberry
فراولة



string
دب

thr-



throat
حلق-حنجرة



throw
يرمي



three
ثلاثة



throne
العرش

Extra Vocabulary

milk	لب	cake	بورتو - كعكة	chocolate	شوكولاتة
lake	بحيرة	beans	فول	belt	حزام
mountain	جبل	sneakers	حذاء رياضي	ice skating	التزلج

Lesson (4 / B)

I HELP MY COMMUNITY



Vocabulary

community	مجتمع	messy	موضوي
weeds	حشائش ضارة	community garden	حديقة المجتمع
dig	يحفر	surprise	مفاجأة
soil	تربة زراعية	everything	كل شيء
kind	عطوف	glad	سعيد - مسرور
seeds	بذور	sunshine	ضوء الشمس
harmful	ضار		



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pick	يقتطف - يلتقط	water	يروي / يسقي
invite	يدعو	receive	يتسلم
picked		watered	
invited		received	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
dig	يحفر	grow	يرفع
get	يحصل على	teach	يدرس/ يعلم
dug		grew	
got		taught	

Important expressions and prepositions

part of	جزء من	start to	يبدأ أن
make friends with	يكون صداقات مع	get bigger	يصبح أكبر
water the plants	يسقي النباتات	happy to	يسعد أن
take out	يخرج - يزيل	take part in	يشارك في
make sure	يتأكد	look after	يعتني بـ
Listen and read.		استمع واقرأ.	

Maged and the community garden

ماجد وحديقة المجتمع

Maged's mom invited him to go to the **community** garden with her. At first, he didn't like it. It was dirty and **messy**, and he thought he didn't like plants. But Maged is a kind boy and he went to help his mom.



ماجد دعيته إلى الذهاب لحديقة المجتمع معها. في بادئ الأمر، لم تعجبه. حيث أن الحديقة كانت غير نظيفة وفوضوية. وكان يظن أنه لا يحب النباتات. لكن ماجد ولد طيب وذهب ليساعد والدته.

Together, they worked in their part of the garden. They dug the soil. He and his mom planted their vegetable and fruit seeds.

قاموا بالعمل سويًا في الجزء الخاص بهما من الحديقة. وقاما بالحفر في التربة الزراعية. زرع هو ووالدته بذور الخضراوات والفاكهة الخاصة بهما.

He **made friends with** the other people at the community garden. After working in the garden, Maged and his new friends sometimes went to play football in the park.

كوّن ماجد صداقات مع الأشخاص الآخرين في حديقة المجتمع. وبعد العمل في الحديقة، كان ماجد وأصدقاؤه الجدد يذهبون أحيانًا للعب كرة القدم في الحديقة العامة.

He remembered what he learned about looking after plants at school. He **watered** the plants every day to keep them healthy. He took out the **weeds** – the harmful plants. He made sure the plants got lots of sunshine to help them grow.

تذكر ماجد ما تعلمه عن الاعتناء بالنباتات في المدرسة. كان يروي النباتات كل يوم ليحافظ على صحتها. أزال ماجد الحشائش الضارة. وتأكد ماجد من أن النباتات تحصل على الكثير من ضوء الشمس اللازم لنموها.

He started to love the garden and was very happy to go there every day. It was so great to see the plants get bigger and bigger. Every day there was a surprise, with a new tomato or some new beans.

بدأ ماجد يحب الحديقة وكان سعيدًا جدًا بالذهاب إلى هناك كل يوم. كان من الرائع رؤية النباتات وهي تنمو أكبر وأكبر. كل يوم كانت هناك مفاجأة بظهور ثمرة طماطم جديدة أو بعض حبوب الفول الجديدة.

When all the fruit and vegetables were ready, the best thing was picking everything. Maged and his mom took the beans, tomatoes, and strawberries to the people in the community – the older people and the people who were ill. They were so happy to receive all the delicious food and Maged felt very **glad**.

وعندما أصبحت كل الفاكهة والخضراوات، كان أفضل شيء هو قطف كل شيء. أخذ ماجد ووالدته الفول والطماطم والمراولة إلى كبار السن والمرضى في المجتمع. وكانوا سعداء جدًا لتلقي كل الطعام اللذيذ وشعر ماجد بسعادة بالغة.

Now Maged loves the garden and teaches others about growing plants.

أصبح ماجد الآن يحب الحديقة ويعلم الآخرين عن زراعة النباتات.

Answer the following questions

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- 1 Where did Maged and his mother go?
- 2 How was the community garden?
- 3 What did they do in the community garden?



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

scream - scratching - strawberries - throne

The king sat on his (1) eating (2) on a string. He was (3) his throat. He heard a (4) : A strong man came to help.

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 The community garden was dirty and (strong - messy - kind).
- 2 (Seeds - Weeds - Grass) are harmful plants.
- 3 Hazem is very happy. He is (glad - sad - bad).
- 4 When all the fruit and vegetables are ready, the best thing is (starting - picking - working) them.
- 5 My computer has a big (screen - strawberry - street).
- 6 The place where I live is called my (surprise - community - string).

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 the - They - soil - dug - .
- 2 made - with Maged - children - the - other - friends - .
- 3 help - came - A strong - to - man - .
- 4 is - strawberries Ahmed eating - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Maged's mom invited him to go to the community garden with her. The garden was dirty and messy. Maged helped his mom clean the garden. Then they dug the soil and planted some vegetable and fruit seeds. Maged made friends with the other children . He watered the plants every day. Maged was happy to see the plants get bigger and bigger.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Maged's mom invited him to go to the (community garden - cinema - zoo).
- 2 Maged (watered - worked - made) friends with the other children.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What did Maged and his mom plant?
- 4 What did Maged do every day?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

النظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Your community garden

Guiding words:

(near - on holidays - plants - trees - friends)



TABA: MY FAVORITE ECO-RESORT

طابا: منتجعي البيئي المفضل



Key Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

eco-resort	منتجع بيئي	eco-holiday	رحلة بيئية
hiking	التنزه - التجول (على الأقدام)	eco-lodges	مساكن / نزل (بيئية)



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Taba	مدينة طابا	excellent	ممتاز
valley	وادي	fantastic = wonderful	رائع
Nubian ibex	تيس الجبل النوبي (وعمل)	rare	نادر
environment	بيئة	culture	ثقافة
flyer	نشرة إعلانية	fascinating	ساحر - خلّاب
main heading	عنوان رئيسي	sub-heading	عنوان فرعي
local people	السكان المحليون	Nawamis village	قرية نواميس
hut	كوخ	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
opinion	رأي	facts	حقائق
activities	أنشطة	camping	التخييم - إقامة مخيمات



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
dive	يغوص / dived	hike	يتمشى - يتجول / hiked
talk	يتكلم / talked	enjoy	يستمتع بـ / enjoyed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
find	يجد / found
go	يذهب / went
give	يعطي / gave
show	يوضح - يبين / showed
meet	يقابل / met
come	يأتي / came
see	يرى / saw
swim	يسبح / swam



Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة

an example of	مثال لـ	a part of	جزء من
good for	مفيد لـ	way of life	طريقة حياة
take part in	يشارك في	stay in	يقيم في

Tip!:

An eco-destination is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.

وجهة السفر البيئية هي مكان تذهب إليه ويكون مفيد للبيئة، لأن الناس هناك يعتنون بالبيئة.

Eco-tourism in Egypt

السياحة البيئية في مصر

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well.

You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

تعتبر طابا مثالاً ممتازاً لجزء من مصر حيث تعمل السياحة البيئية بشكل جيد. يمكنك العثور على وادي، جبال، صحراء، والبحر هناك.

You can find fantastic **wildlife** in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا، مثل الوعل النوبي والطيور النادرة. وهذا جيد جداً للسياح المهتمون بالبيئة لأنه يمكنهم من الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

السكان المحليون ودودون جداً، لذلك يستطيع السياح المهتمون بالبيئة تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating!

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, **hiking**, and camping.

They can stay in camps and **eco-lodges**.

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا، توجد قرية النواميس، وهي قرية ذات مباني مستديرة قديمة جداً. إنها مباني رائعة. يمكن للسياح المهتمون بالبيئة في طابا الاستمتاع برياضة الغطس، والتزهر، والتخييم، ويمكنهم الإقامة في معسكرات ونزل بيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شيء في طابا لقضاء إجازة عظيمة!



Camp in Sinai, Egypt



Nawamis Structure - Sinai, Egypt

Project

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Look at the flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba.

انظر إلى النشرة الاعلانية التي تقوم بالدعايا لقضاء عطلة بيئية في طابا.

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

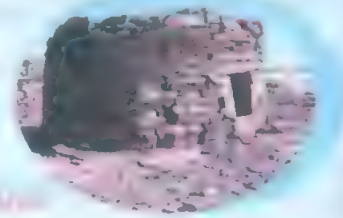
Meet the local people

Talk to them about their way of life.



Enjoy the local culture

Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.



Stay in our comfortable huts

They are cool and eco-friendly

إنها رائعة ومديقة للبيئة.

Take part in exciting activities

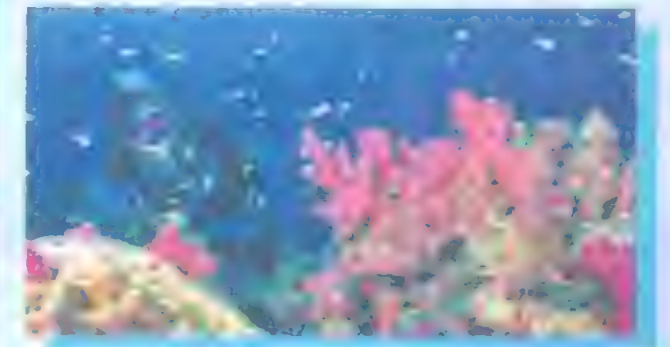
You can hike, swim, and dive.

Enjoy the wildlife

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.



تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر! لدينا سمك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.





Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 The local people are very bad. ☐
- 2 You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba. ☐
- 3 Tourists can't have a meal with local people. ☐
- 4 The Nubian ibex and rare birds are found in Taba. ☐

2 Choose the correct word(s). اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-(mountains - lodges - valleys).
- 2 Local people in Taba are (bad - unkind - friendly).
- 3 Nawamis (village - city - town) is in Taba.
- 4 There are (ugly - wonderful - bad) fish, birds, and animals in Taba.

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences. اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1 people - local - The - friendly - are - very - .

2 stay - camps - Tourists - in - can - .

3 enjoy - You - Taba - can - in - wildlife - the - .

4 hike - Taba - You - in - can - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

A) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What can you find in Taba?
- 2 What can eco-tourists enjoy in Taba?

B) Choose the correct answer.

- 3 Nawamis village has very (modern - old - new) buildings.
- 4 Taba is a part of (Egypt - France - England).

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Guiding words:

Taba

(part - mountains - wildlife - diving)



Review on Unit (4)

 community garden
 coral reefs
 forest
 mountain
 wildlife
 factory
 island
 lake
 diving
 greenhouse
 atmosphere
 livestock
 waterfall



Looking after our world

Three consonant clusters

 swallow

 singing

 street

 wind

 screw

 scream

 scratch

 screen

 threat

 threat

 thrive

 thrive

Math: Number sequence

10 12 14 16 18 20 (add 2)
 20 18 16 14 12 10 (subtract 2)

3

The fox was running.
 The people were walking.
 He was running down the road.
 Was the cat running?

Help your child revise unit (4).

ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الرابعة

Writing Corner

Look and write a paragraph of **FIVE (5)** sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Climate change

“greenhouse gases - factories - transportation - livestock - carbon dioxide - methane”

Climate change is a change to the normal weather of the Earth. Greenhouse gases come from factories, transportation, building things and livestock farming. Greenhouse gases are gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor and methane. Climate change has bad results on the life on the Earth. We should stop climate change.



Eco-tourism

“environment - wildlife - local - culture - tourists”

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and gives jobs for local people. Tourists stay in small, local hotels. Scientists like to learn about local wildlife and local culture. We should support eco-tourism.



The community garden

“plants - trees - take part in - water - keep clean”

We should look after the community garden. We should take part in keeping it clean. We should water its trees and plants. We can also plant vegetables and fruit in it.



Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك ان يكتب فقرات.

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	غابة	.....	جزيرة
.....	بحيرة	.....	جبل
.....	الشعاب المرجانية	.....	شلال

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	تغير المناخ	.....	الغلاف الجوي
.....	صوبة زراعية	.....	تربية الماشية

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	السياحة البيئية	.....	البيئة
.....	الحياة البرية	.....	فندق
.....	يفطس	.....	التلوث

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	فراولة	.....	خيط
.....	العرش	.....	حلق
.....	مسمار (قللوظ)	.....	شاشة
.....	قوي	.....	يصرخ
.....	يرمي / يلقى	.....	شارع

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	حديقة المجتمع	.....	فوضوي
.....	حشائش ضارة	.....	سعيد
.....	مفاجأة	.....	يكون صداقات

Activities on Unit (4)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- Elephantine Island is in Aswan.
- Aswan isn't a calm place.
- The sunsets are fantastic.
- The houses in Aswan are beautiful.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

local - pollution - exciting - environment

Eco-tourism is an(1)..... idea. It looks after the(2)..... and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the(3)..... that planes cause. Eco-tourists stay in(4)..... hotels.

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- lose - food - Animals - their - may - .
- have - We - rain - enough - don't - .
- gives - for - jobs - Eco-tourism - local people - .
- friends - people - with - He - other - made - the - .

5 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 (Sports - Livestock farming - Farms) causes climate change.
- 2 He likes history. He likes to study (old - modern - new) things.
- 3 Hana was (travel - traveling - travels) by boat.
- 4 I like fruit, I want to eat a (screw - strawberry - screen).
- 5 Amal likes (making - doing - walking) friends.

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Taba is my eco-resort. You can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. Eco-tourists can enjoy diving, hiking and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 You can find (lakes - valleys - hills) in Taba.
- 2 The local people are very (cruel - bad - friendly).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What activities can eco-tourists enjoy doing in Taba?
- 4 Where can eco-tourists stay in Taba?

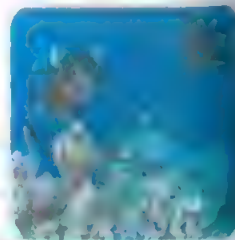
6 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

الظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Pros and cons of eco-tourism

Guiding words:

(new culture - jobs - damage - travel - comfortable)



Unit (5)

Jobs we do

وظائف نقوم بها

In this unit the student will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.

- understand ecosystems.

- learn about jobs in tourism.

يتعلم عن الوظائف في مجال السياحة.

- practice using the present simple to talk about routines.

يتدرب على استخدام المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين.

- practice using *must* to talk about obligation.

يتدرب على استخدام *must* للتحدث عن الالتزام.

- understand and discuss a traditional tale.

- learn to say words with diphthongs.

تعلم نطق كلمات بها أصوات مزدوجة.

- understand pie charts.

يفهم الرسم البياني الدائري.

- write about the pros and cons of different jobs.

يكتب عن مزايا وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.

- make a poster about teamwork.

Lesson (1)

JOBS IN ANCIENT EGYPT

وظائف في مصر القديمة

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



Lesson 1

Extra Vocabulary

hieroglyphs	رموز الهيروغليفية	jewelry	مجوهرات	successful	ناجح
sculptures	منحوتات	economy	اقتصاد	list	قائمة
grains	حبوب - فلال	trader	تاجر	clay	طين
skillful	ماهر	flax = linen	كتان	gold	ذهب
temple	معبد	female	أنثى	row	صف
community	مجتمع	pharaohs	فراعنة	column	عمود
medical school	مدرسة الطب	famous	مشهور	sign	علامة
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	queen	ملكة	medicine	دواء
Ancient Egyptians	مصريون قديمون	records	سجلات	pots	أكواب

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
weave	weaved	know	knew
plant	planted	write	wrote
clean	cleaned	spend	spent
bake	baked	buy	bought
respect	respected	sell	sold

Important expressions and prepositions

work hard	يعمل بجد	do a job	يفعل وظيفة
easy to learn	سهل التعلم	consist of	يتكون من
write down	يكتب	look after	يراقب
take care of	يرعى	important for	مهم لـ

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard.

Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers.

بلکن معظم الناس عملوا کمزاعین.

Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

كان المزارعون مهمين جدًا في اقتصاد مصر القديمة. كانوا يعملون في الحقول التي كانت بالقرب من بيوتهم وزرعوا المحاصيل، وعادة ما تكون حبوبًا مثل القمح والذرة والكتان. كما زرعوا الخضروات والفاكهة أيضًا.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. The craftspeople were skillful and everybody in the community respected them. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

واعتادوا نسج ملابس جميلة وصنع اواني طهي ملونة. كان الحرفيون ماهرين وكان كل فرد في المجتمع يحترمهم.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

الوجبات وتنظيف المنزل والاعتناء بطفلهن وكل ما يخصهن من أعمال البيت والعمل الخياطة وصناعة الصابون وخبز الخبز في المنزل أيضا وإستيعابهن فيه أو إستعدادهن له وقد كان المصنفون يهتمون بالملابس المشهورة في مصر القديمة.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

كان الجميع في مصر القديمة يعرفون أن العمل مهم للحياة لذلك كان القدماء المصريون ناجحين جدًا!

استمع واقرأ.^٢



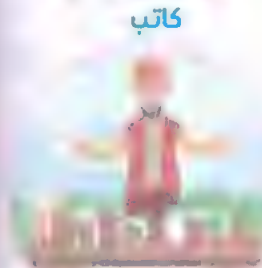
Words with their description.

تاریخ جمع و تالیف:



People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

احباب هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين في مصر القديمة. استطاعوا تدوين كل شيء. احتفظوا بالسجلات وقوائم الاشياء الهامة.



People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

الناس الذين قاموا بهذه الوظيفة سأمروا عبر النيل ذهاباً وإياباً. اشتروا وباعوا الأشياء مثل الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.



If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

إذا كنت جيدًا في عمل الأشياء فتلك الوظيفة ستكون جيدة لك. فأصحاب هذه الوظيفة صنعوا أشياءًا من الصلصال والخشب والذهب.



A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

مجلس القضاء الاعلى
السلطنة



Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

استطاع كلاً من الرجال والنساء القيام بهذه الوظيفة أيضاً. كان يجب أن تذهب إلى مدرسة الطب لتمارس هذه الوظيفة. كان عليك أن تعتني بالناس المرضى وأن تقوم بعمل الأدوية.





Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

- 1 Ancient Egyptian women didn't work at home. ☐
- 2 Women cleaned the house and cooked food. ☐
- 3 Egyptian farmers didn't grow vegetables. ☐
- 4 Farmers raised chickens to get eggs and meat. ☐

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

pots - weave - craftsmen - paintings

Ancient Egyptian () were very good. They made beautiful (), and beautiful gold jewelery. They used to () beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking ().

3 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 He is a (teacher - doctor - baker). He works in a hospital.
- 2 A (scribe - trader - fisherman) is a person who keeps records and lists for important things.
- 3 (Trade - Hieroglyphs - Fishing) is a system of writing.
- 4 (Craftsmen - Doctors - Traders) buy and sell things.
- 5 Women in Ancient Egypt worked (in - at - on) home.
- 6 Hieroglyphs consists (with - from - of) 500 signs written in rows and columns.
- 7 A (doctor - teacher - fisherman) works in a school.
- 8 A (trader - teacher - baker) bakes bread.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 how - Scribes - read - to - knew - well - write - and - ,
- 2 fruit - plant - Farmers - could - vegetables - and - ,
- 3 were - Ancient - successful - very - Egyptians - .
- 4 become - could - Women - pharaohs - ,

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 People in Ancient Egypt worked very (lazily - easily - hard).
- 2 Farmers worked in (fields - schools - hospitals).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What crops did farmers grow?
- 4 Did everyone have a job in Ancient Egypt?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ what jobs did people in ancient egypt do

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / A)

CLIL: SCIENCE

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



a freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة



a desert ecosystem
النظام البيئي الصحراوي



a marine ecosystem
النظام البيئي البحري



a rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئي لبرك المياه العذبة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

source	مصدر	insects	حشرات
natural world	العالم الطبيعي	survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة
connected	متصل	shelter	ماوى
connection	اتصال	weather	طقس
rainforest	غابة استوائية	temperature	درجة حرارة
crabs	كابوريا / سرطان البحر	seaweed	عشب بحري
alive	على قيد الحياة	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
suitable	مناسب	different	مختلف
conditions	أحوال / ظروف	humans	البشر

Living things

كائنات حية

Non-living things

أشياء غير حية

fish	insects	crabs	rocks	water
tree	seaweed		sand	sunlight



Conjugation of verbs

صيغ فعل

Regular verbs

فعل منتظم

Irregular verbs

فعل غير منتظم

Present	Past	Present	Past
live	يعيش lived	give	يعطي gave
need	يحتاج needed	make	يصنع made
carry	يحمل carried	think	يفكر / يعتقد thought



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

think about	يفكر في	on Earth	على الأرض
work together	يعمل سوية	the Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions

living	something that is alive
non-living	something that isn't alive
ecosystem	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc, in a place
rockpool	a small area of water with rocks, crabs seaweed, etc.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

What is an ecosystem? ما هي النظام البيئي؟

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem.

Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي متصل. هذا الاتصال بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية يسمى النظام البيئي. من الممكن أن تكون الأنظمة البيئية صغيرة مثل بركة مياه صخرية أو كبيرة جداً مثل غابة الأمازون المطيرة. الكائنات الحية في النظام البيئي للبرك الصخرية هي الأسماك وسرطان البحر والأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمل وضوء الشمس. تعمل هذه الأشياء معاً لتكون نظاماً بيئياً. هناك الكثير من الأنظمة البيئية المختلفة على الأرض.

Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

① What is an ecosystem?

② Are crabs living things?

Help your child understand ecosystems

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم النظم البيئية

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

Why are ecosystems important?

Everything in the natural world is connected. An ecosystem is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable conditions.

كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي متصل. النظام البيئي هو المكان الذي تعيش فيه الحيوانات والنباتات والكائنات الحية الأخرى معاً. تحتاج الحيوانات والنباتات إلى بعضها البعض لكي تعيش. وتحتاج أيضاً إلى ظروف مناسبة.

Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive. They need food, water, and shelter. And they need the weather to be at the right temperature.

تأكل الحيوانات النباتات والحشرات والحيوانات الأخرى من أجل البقاء. وتحتاج إلى الطعام والماء والمأوى. وتحتاج إلى أن يكون الطقس في درجة الحرارة المناسبة.

Plants need sunlight and water to survive. Some plants need animals, birds, and insects to carry seeds to other areas so they can grow. They also need the right climate.

تحتاج النباتات إلى ضوء الشمس والماء من أجل البقاء. تحتاج بعض النباتات إلى الحيوانات والطيور والحشرات لنقل البذور إلى مناطق أخرى حتى تتمكن من النمو. وهي أيضاً تحتاج إلى المناخ المناسب.

Climate is also an important part of an ecosystem. Trees give us oxygen. This makes the air cleaner and allows plants, animals, and humans to live in a comfortable environment.

المناخ أيضاً جزء مهم من النظام البيئي. تعطينا الأشجار الأكسجين. وهذا يجعل الهواء أنقى ويسمح للنباتات والحيوانات والبشر أن يعيشوا في بيئة مريحة.

Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

① What do animals eat?

② Do plants need sunlight to survive?

③ Is climate an important part of an ecosystem?

Help your child learn why ecosystems are important.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم لماذا النظم البيئية مهمة.

Lesson (2 / B)

CLIL: SCIENCE

Key Vocabulary

jackals	أبناؤى (حيوان)	turtle	سلحفاة	gazelle	غزال
ibex	مهر	hippo	فرس النهر	fox	ثعلب
mangrove trees	النباتات المائية	species	أنواع - فصائل	coast	ساحل
endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	camel	جمل	reeds	قصب / بوص

Extra Vocabulary

extinct	مندثر - منقرض	border	حد جغرافي / يحد	type	نوع
salt water	مياه مالحة	habitat	بيئة	acacia	شجرة السنط (اكاشا)
tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء	bamboo	نبات البامبو	left	مبقي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
kill	يقتل / killed	lose	يفقد / lost
include	يشمل / يتضمن / included	draw	يرسم / drew

Important expressions and prepositions

do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	good place for	مكان جيد لـ
such as	مثل	both of	كلا من
plenty of	كثير من	in the world	في العالم

Help your child identify these words.

Read and learn.

Egypt's marine ecosystem

النظام البيئي البحري المصري

Egypt's coast includes the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. In both of these seas, there are many different plants and animals. Some of them, like turtles, birds, and mangrove trees, are **endangered**. There are more than 800 types of seaweed and more than 200 types of coral.

Egypt's desert ecosystem

النظام البيئي الصحراوي المصري

About 90% of Egypt's land is desert areas. It looks like nothing can live in these areas, but there are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, such as camels, gazelles, **jackals**, ibex, and foxes. There are also some plants, such as **tamarisk** and **acacia**.

حوالي 90% من أرض مصر عبارة عن مناطق صحراوية. يبدو أنه لا يوجد شيء يمكن أن يعيش في هذه المناطق ولكن يوجد الكثير من الحيوانات المختلفة في صحاري مصر مثل الجمال والغزلان وابن أوى ونيس الجبل والثعلب. يوجد أيضاً بعض النباتات مثل شجرة الطرفاء وشجرة السنط.

Egypt's freshwater ecosystem

النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة في مصر

The banks of the Nile River have many different **species** of animals and plants, like hippos and bamboo. There is lots of freshwater, not salt water like the sea. Many water birds live in the **reeds** on the river bank. It's a good place for them because there are **plenty of fish to eat**.

Note:

Endangered means that there are not many of a plant or animal left in the world. This is because their habitat has been lost or because too many of them have been killed.

Help your child read about Egypt's ecosystems.



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

ecosystem - natural - connection - connected

Everything in the (1) world is (2).

This (3) between living and non-living things is called an (4).

اقرأ وصل.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 living | 2 something that isn't alive |
| 2 non-living | 3 all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place |
| 3 ecosystem | 4 a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc. |
| 4 rockpool | 5 something that is alive |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- Everything in the natural world is (connected - disconnected - connect).
- Trees and animals are (non-living - living - dead) things.
- Living is something that is (dead - endangered - alive).
- The water in the Nile is (freshwater - saltwater - sweet water).
- Egypt borders (three - four - two) seas.
- Fish and seaweed live in a (desert - marine - rockpool) ecosystem.
- Camels and gazelles live in a (desert - marine - freshwater) ecosystem.
- (Safe - Comfortable - Endangered) means that there are not many of a plant or animal left in the world.

Lesson 2

- An (ecosystem - sunlight - air) is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together.

- (Trees - Rocks - Birds) are non-living things.

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ واعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة صحيحة.

- survive - need - Plants - sunlight - to - .

- and - insects - plants = eat - Animals - .

- in - live - Foxes - desert - the - .

- species - are - endangered - Turtles - .

5 Read the following text and answer the questions

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Everything in the natural world is connected. An ecosystem is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable conditions. Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive. They need food, water, and shelter. And they need the weather to be at the right temperature.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Animals eat plants and insects to (die - leave - survive).
- Animals need the weather to be at the (right - wrong - false) temperature.

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is an ecosystem?
- Why do animals and plants need each other?

Lesson (3)

TOURISM HELPS OUR COMMUNITY

Key Vocabulary

tourism	السياحة	welcoming	مرحب
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	archaeologist	عالم آثار

Extra Vocabulary

hotel manager	مدير فندق	driver	سائق	site	موقع
chefs	طهارة	waiter	خادم	ready	جاهز
boat captain	قبطان القارب	builder	باني	friendly	ودود
boss	رئيس في العمل	customers	زبان	wonderful	رائع
shop owners	أصحاب المتاجر	airport	مطار	amazing	مدهل
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	tourist	سياحي - سائح	enormous	صخم
hotel workers	عمال الفندق	geography	جغرافيا	monuments	أثار
architect	مهندس معماري	country	دولة	menu	قائمة طعام

Places in Aswan and Nubia

The Great Temple	المعبد الكبير
Temple of Philae	معبد فيلة
Abu Simbel	معبد أبو سمبل
Nubia	النوبة
Elephantine Island	جزيرة الفنتين
Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك
Aswan Botanical Garden	حديقة أسوان النباتية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
visit يزور	visited	drive يقود	drove
prepare يعد - يحضر	prepared	tell يخبر	told
watch يشاهد	watched	leave يغادر	left

Important expressions and prepositions

work in tourism يعمل في السياحة	local restaurant مطعم محلي
historical places أماكن تاريخية	sharp knife سكين حاد
look after يعتني بـ	make sure يتأكد
able to قادر على	all of these كل هؤلاء
delicious traditional dinner عشاء تقليدي لذيذ	

Listen and read.

My trip to Nubia with a tour guide

رحلتي إلى النوبة مع مرشد سياحي

Today more than three million people in Egypt work in tourism. There are hotel managers, waiters, chefs, boat captains, hotel workers, farmers, drivers, and shop owners. All of these people help to make Egypt one of the world's best places to visit for a holiday. And of course, one of the most important jobs is a tour guide.



يعمل اليوم ما يزيد على ثلاثة ملايين مصري في السياحة. فهناك مديرو الفنادق والبنادق والطهارة ومطابخ الفنادق وعمال الفنادق والسائقون وأصحاب المتاجر. كل هؤلاء الأشخاص يساعدون في جعل مصر واحدة من أجمل الأماكن للزيارة لقضاء عطلة. وبالطبع أحد أهم هذه الوظائف هو المرشد السياحي.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. They need to know about the places that the tourists want to visit, but they also need to be friendly and welcoming so that the tourists have a good holiday.

يقوم المرشدون السياحيون بإرشاد السائحين في البلاد التي يزورونها. المرشدون بحاجة إلى معرفة الأماكن التي يريد السائحون زيارتها ولكنهم أيضًا بحاجة إلى أن يكونوا ودودين ومرحبين حتى يضي السائح إجازة جيدة.

One place you will find amazing Egyptian tour guides is in Nubia. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places to see, like the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island, and the island of Philae. One of my favorite trips last year was to the small village of Abu Simbel. The hotel chef had prepared a delicious breakfast of bread, yogurt, and fresh fruit for us to eat before we left with Ali, our tour guide. Rami, the taxi driver, told us stories of old Nubia and its history all the way to Abu Simbel.

وأحد الأماكن التي سنجد فيها مرشدين سياحيين مصريين النوبة. في النوبة نجد العديد من الآثار التاريخية والأماكن الشيقة لزيارتها مثل المعبد الكبير لرمسيس الثاني وجربة المنامة وجزيرة فيلة. وأحد رحلاتي المفضلة العام الماضي كانت إلى قرية أبو سمبل الصغيرة. فقد أعد طاهي الفندق إفطارًا لذيذًا من خبز ورياحي وفاكهة طازجة لتتناوله قبل أن نغادر مع علي مرشدنا السياحي. وقد أخبرنا رامي سائق التاكسي قصصًا عن النوبة القديمة وتاريخها ونحن في طريقنا إلى أبي سمبل.

The Great Temple is wonderful and Ali told us all about its history. He knew such a lot and we learned so much from him. It's amazing to think that builders, architects, and archaeologists were able to move the enormous temples! We also bought souvenirs from the market traders near the temples. Rami took us to a local restaurant where the chef made us a delicious traditional dinner and we watched the beautiful sunset over Abu Simbel. It was the best day of our holiday!

المعبد الكبير رائع وأخبرنا "علي" عن كل شيء عن تاريخه. فقد كان يعرف الكثير وتعلمنا منه الكثير. من المدهش أن نفكر في أن عمال البناء والمهندسين المعماريين وعلماء الآثار كانوا قادرين على تحريك هذه المعابد الضخمة! واشترينا أيضًا هدايا تذكارية من تجار السوق بالقرب من المعابد. أخذنا رامي لمطعم محلي حيث أعد لنا الطاهي عشاءًا تقليديًا لذيذًا وشاهدنا غروب الشمس الرائع فوق معبد أبي سمبل. وكان أفضل يوم في إجازتنا.

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

Answer the following questions:

1 What do tour guides do?

2 What should tour guides be?

3 What places can you see in Nubia?

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Form:

التكوين

I / We / You / They / **اسم جمع** + inf. **مصدر**

e.g. I play tennis.

e.g. We cook food.

He / She / It / **اسم مفرد** + inf. + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He plays tennis.

e.g. She studies hard.

Spelling rules

- نضيف (es) للفعل إذا انتهى بـ (o, sh, ch, x, ss).

go → goes

watch → watches

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies).

study → studies

- أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف متحرك نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

Usage:

الاستخدام

1- Habits:

1- يعبر عن عادات:

e.g. We go to school every day.

2- Facts:

2- يعبر عن حقائق:

e.g. Cows give us milk.

Key words

كلمات الدالة

always **دائمًا** { usually **عادة** } often **غالبًا**

sometimes **أحيانًا** { every (day,) **كل (يوم...)** } never **أبداً**

e.g. Dina always plays basketball.

Help your child use the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط.

Negative:

I / You / We / They / (اسم جمع) + don't + المصدر

e.g. We don't go to school on Fridays.

He / She / It / (اسم مفرد) + doesn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Ali doesn't fly a plane.

Question:

Yes/No question

Do + (I / we / you / they) / (اسم جمع) + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

e.g. Do you like fruit? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Does + (he / she / it) / (اسم مفرد) + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

e.g. Does he drive to work? - Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

Wh- question

Q.W. + (do / does) + subject (فاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

e.g. Where do you live? - I live in Aswan.

e.g. How does he go to school? - He goes to school by bus.

Must / Mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

Subject فاعل + must + inf. المصدر

يستخدم (must + inf) للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء.

e.g. I must do my homework.

Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. المصدر

يستخدم (mustn't + inf) للتعبير عن المنع والحظر.

e.g. You mustn't walk on the grass.

1 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- Mrs Soha (work - working - works) in a school.
- We (play - plays - to play) computer games at the weekend.
- I (eat - eat - eating) yogurt and melon for breakfast.
- Hany (catch - catches - catching) the bus to Cairo every morning.
- I (must - mustn't - am) do my English homework.
- You (aren't - haven't - mustn't) walk on the grass.
- Sara (must - mustn't - aren't) wake her sick sister up.
- We (must - mustn't - aren't) look after the environment.

2 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

● to I 10 am drive at work - .

● looks hippos - Walid after - .

● do I must homework - my - .

● talk - You - mustn't - library - the - in - .



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Tour guides show farmers the country they are visiting. ☐
- 2 Tour guides need to be friendly. ☐
- 3 Tourists can have a good holiday. ☐
- 4 Tour guides don't need to be welcoming. ☐

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

healthy - teeth - hippos - must

Walid looks after (1) . He must make sure they are happy and (2) . He must prepare their food. He (3) give them a bath. He must even clean their (4) .

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 A tour guide | a Botanical Garden. |
| 2 The Temple of Philae | b work in restaurants. |
| 3 I visited Aswan | c helps tourists. |
| 4 Chefs | d is in Aswan. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Choose the correct word(s). اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 A (taxi driver - farmer - manager) drives people to work.
- 2 (Trips - Tourism - Airports) helps our community.

1 A (chef - waiter - tour guide) shows tourists the country they are visiting.

- 2 She (eat - eats - eating) yogurt for breakfast.
- 3 We (study - studying - studies) our lessons every day.
- 4 He (mustn't - isn't - hasn't) talk in the library.
- 5 (Do - Does - Are) you like English?
- 6 Maher (don't - doesn't - isn't) sleep late.

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences. اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 up He kitchen - the - tidy - must.
- 2 must - water - fresh - They hippos give .

3 cut - knife - a sharp - with - vegetables - I - the.

4 souvenirs - shop - We - the - from - bought .

6 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences. انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

A trip to Nubia

Guiding words:

(last week - family - temples - sunset - enjoyed)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Key Vocabulary

ant	نملة	fence	سور / سياج
grasshopper	جرادة - جندب	buzz	يطن / أزيز (صوت النحل)
bee	نحلة	relaxing	مسترخي
boring	ممل		

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

butterfly	فراشة	fall	الخريف	conversation	محادثة
insect	حشرة	winter	الشتاء	animal keeper	حارس حيوانات
lazy	كسول	spring	الربيع	police officer	فابط شرطة
future	المستقبل	summer	الصيف	surprised	مدهش
crops	محاصيل	dentist	طبيب الأسنان	lovely	جميل - رائع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

الأفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
rest	يرتاح rested	shine	تشرق shone
harvest	يحصد harvested	eat	ياكل ate
hop	ينط hopped	fly	يطير flew
carry on	يواصل - يستمر carried on	spend	يقضي spent
prefer	يفضل preferred	understand	يفهم understood
buzz	يطن buzzed	teach	يُعلم taught

Irregular verbs

الأفعال غير منتظمة

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

full of	ملينة - مملوءة بـ	work hard	يعمل بجد
find out	يكتشف - يعرف	have fun	يُفرح
a lovely day	يوم جميل	Why don't we + مصدر	لم لا...؟

Listen and read.

The ant and the grasshopper

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are **buzzing** and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

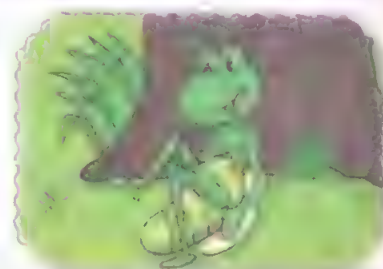
إنه الربيع والشمس مشرقة. و الحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور لتأكل منها الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. يطن النحل وتطير الفراشات في الشمس. ومع ذلك يعمل النمل.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time **relaxing**. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is **resting** against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden **fence**.

الجراد الكسول يقضي معظم وقته **يرتاح**. ولا يحب العمل. اليوم، هو **يرتاح** ضد شجرة عندما يسمع صوتاً غريباً. ويريد أن يعرف ما هذا الصوت. وينظر من فوق سور الحديقة.

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper, "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to **carry on** with my work," says the ant.

الجراد: ماذا تفعلين أيتها النملة؟
النملة: أنا أعمل.
الجراد: لكنه يوم جميل، لم لا تتوقفين عن العمل ويمكننا أن نلعب.
النملة: شكرًا لك، لكنني بحاجة إلى مواصلة عملي.



"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.



النملة: ربما، لكنه شيء يجب علينا جميعًا القيام به. يجب أن نفكر في المستقبل وليس اليوم فقط.

Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all his crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."



وسريعًا حلّ فصل الشتاء والطقس بارد جدًا. والجراد جائع وليس لديه أي طعام ولا يمكنه العثور عليه.

ويقرر الجراد أن يذهب إلى بيت النملة ويطلب منها الطعام. ويذكرها بالحوار الذي كانا قد تحدثا فيه في الصيف. ويخبرها أنه لم يعمل طوال الصيف ولم يجمع أي طعام. النملة تقول له: "نعم، من الجيد أن نلعب، ولكن من المهم جدًا أن نعمل أيضًا أن نعمل بجد".

Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Why is the grasshopper surprised?
2. What do the ant and the grasshopper teach us?
3. Will the grasshopper work hard next spring?

Help your child listen and read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

Pronunciation

Diphthongs (الاصوات المزدوجة (المدغمة)

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

/au/

down

town

brown

mouse

loud

/aɪ/

why

try

eye

buy

light

/ɔɪ/

boy

enjoy

toy

point

noise

Suffix (-ist)

The suffix (-ist) means someone who does something. We often use it in words for jobs.

اللاحقة (-ist) تعني الشخص الذي يقوم بشيء ما وغالبًا ما نستخدمها في كلمات تشير إلى الوظائف.



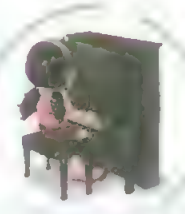
biologist
عالم أحياء



journalist
صحفي



receptionist
موظف استقبال



pianist
عازفة بيانو



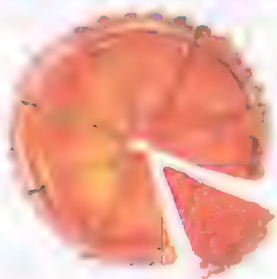
scientist
عالم

Help your child learn to say words with diphthongs.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم نطق كلمات بها اصوات مزدوجة (مدغمة)

Math

Pie charts المخططات الدائرية



This is a pie.

هذه فطيرة



This is a pie chart.

هذا مخطط دائري

A pie chart is a way of showing information. المخطط الدائري: هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

Look at the chart.

What job do you want to do?

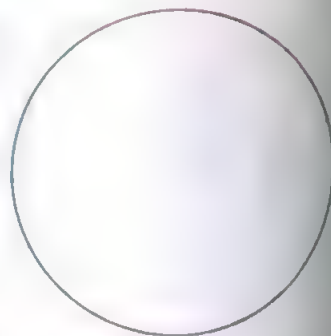
biologist	30
scientist	10
receptionist	10
journalist	30
pianist	20



هذه المعلومات على المخطط الدائري.

Show this information on the chart.

sport	No. of players
football	15
basketball	25
volleyball	30
tennis	10
swimming	20



Help your child use the pie chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم المخطط الدائري.



Activities

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

music - Why - pianist - job

Omar : What (1) do you want to do?

Nagy : I want to be a (2)

Omar : (3) ?

Nagy : Because I like (4)

Choose the correct word(s). اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- The ants and bees are (sports - insects - birds)
- He is lazy. He spends most of his time (working - running - relaxing)
- I need to (carry on - carry of - carry from) with my work.
- The grasshopper thinks working is (lazy - poor - boring).
- The bees are (running - spending - buzzing) and the butterflies are flying.
- He works in a hotel. He's a (scientist - receptionist - biologist).
- Bread - Pie - Pizza charts are used to show information.
- He looks after our teeth. He's a (pianist - journalist - dentist).

Read and match. اقرأ واصل.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| The butterflies | a a tall fence. |
| Spring and fall | b She likes music. |
| The garden has | c are seasons. |
| She's a pianist. | d are flying in the sun. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The (gardens - clubs - schools) are full of flowers.
- 2 The grasshopper is (fast - kind - lazy).
- 3 The bees are (buzzing - walking - running).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What are the ants doing?
- 2 How does the grasshopper spend most of his time?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Spring

Guiding words:

(gardens - sun - buzzing - ants - work - lazy)



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

6 Punctuate the following.

it's important to work hard

Lessons (5 & 6)

WRITING / PROJECT



Key Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

operation عملية جراحية teamwork عمل جماعي teammates زملاء الفريق
concert حفل موسيقي computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

sick مريض team فريق injured مصاب
indoors بالداخل dirty قذر - متسخ report تقرير
outdoors بالخارج solution حل the countryside الريف
part جزء the worst الأسوأ distance مسافة
aim هدف vet طبيب بيطري experiment تجربة علمية



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

Present

Past

Present

Past

scare يخيف scared brought يحضر
solve يحل solved met يقابل
prefer يفضل preferred won يفوز
agree يوافق agreed thought يعتقد
bring
meet
win
think



Important expressions and prepositions

on a farm في مزرعة keen on متحمس لـ
get up يلهض - يستيقظ good at جيد في
make friends يصادق (يكون صداقات) do an experiment يقوم بعمل تجربة
work with يعمل مع يحل
disagree with لا يتفق مع يحل مشكلة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean.



اسمي رنا. أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب وظيفتي. إذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، أقوم بمساعدتهم على التحسن. في بعض الأيام أعمل بالداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إليّ. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، يجب أن تكون الحجرة نظيفة جدًا جدًا.

On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! I lived on a farm when I was younger, so I'm used to it, and I love the countryside. What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

في أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى بيوت أو مزارع الناس لفحص حيواناتهم. من الممكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن متسخة جدًا ولكن لا يانع! كنت أعيش في مزرعة عندما كنت صغيرة. لذا فأنا معتادة على ذلك وأحب الريف. ما أسوأ جزء في الوظيفة؟ إنه عندما عرض حيوان في الليل واضطر إلى النهوض!

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games.

مرحبًا، أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أنني لا أريد أن أعمل مع الحيوانات. إنها تخيفني. إنني لست حريصًا على أن أكون بالخارج. لذلك كنت أريد وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا، كنت أحب لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

أنا أيضًا أستمتع حقًا بحل المشاكل. لذلك في عملي أقوم بكل الأمرين! أنا أيضًا أستمتع بالعمل مع الأشخاص الآخرين. يوجد 16 شخصًا في فريقتي. نحن لا نتفق دائمًا ولكننا نتوصل لأمثل الحلول.



اكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

Write (T) True or (F) False.

- 1 Rana is a vet.
- 2 Rana doesn't work with animals.
- 3 Sherif is a computer programmer.

الكتابة عن وظيفة.

Writing about a job.

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about

عندما تفكر في وظيفة، من المهم أن تفكر في ما تحب وما لا تحب. فكر في

- ★ being indoors or outdoors
- ★ traveling long distances
- ★ getting up very early
- ★ writing reports
- ★ meeting / talking to new people

أن تكون بالداخل أو الخارج

السفر لمسافات طويلة

الاستيقاظ مبكرًا جدًا

كتابة تقارير

التحدث أو الاجتماع مع أشخاص جدد

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about ...

ومن المهم أيضًا أن تفكر فيما تجيده وما لا تجيده. فكر في

- ★ solving problems
- ★ helping sick people / animals
- ★ making new friends
- ★ reading lots of information
- ★ working in a team

حل المشاكل

مساعدة الناس الذين يعانون من المرض

تكوين صداقات جديدة

قراءة الكثير من المعلومات

العمل في فريق

What job do / don't you want to do?

When I'm older, I want to be a because
I think this is a good job for me because I like I'm
good at and I enjoy
I don't want to be a because I'm not good at
Also, I don't really enjoy



When I'm older I want to be a doctor because I like being indoors. I think it is a good job for me because I like helping sick people. I'm good at checking people and I enjoy working hard.

Help your child write about a job he / she wants to do.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الوظيفة التي يرغب في القيام بها.

Help your child read about jobs.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الوظائف.

Project

Teamwork العمل الجماعي



I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.

أعمل في فريق في كرة القدم



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.



I work in a team for the school concert.

أعمل في فريق من أجل حفل المدرسة الموسيقي

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your **teammates** to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

عندما تعمل في فريق، تعمل مع أشخاص آخرين للقيام بعمل شيء ما. على سبيل المثال، فإن هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك في الفريق لتحقيق ذلك. ولا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك!

Think! فكروا

What happens if you disagree with a teammate? How do you work out a solution?

ماذا يحدث إذا لم تتفق مع زميلك في الفريق؟ كيف تحل الموقف؟

Help your child read a poster about teamwork.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ملصق عن العمل الجماعي.



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

job - better - animals - sick

My name's Rana. I work with(1)..... and I love my(2)..... If animals are(3)..... or injured, I help to make them(4).....

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 She is a (doctor - vet - baker). She works with animals.
- 2 He is a (doctor - vet - computer programmer). He loves the computer.
- 3 Farmers live in the (city - town - countryside).
- 4 You should work (out - up - down) the best solution.
- 5 I work in a (team - class - hospital) when I help mom in the kitchen.

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة.

science - a - I - team - work - in - .

want - to - I - work - animals - with - .

very - She - up - early - likes - getting - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Sherif wanted an (office - outside - outdoor) job.
 2 Sherif enjoys working with (animals - birds - people).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What did Sherif love playing?

- 4 Is Sherif keen on being outside?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

A job you want

Guiding words:

journalist - a good job - writing reports - talking



Review on Unit (5)

Jobs

doctor, craftman, fisherman, scribe, archaeologist, farmer, teacher, baker

Jobs we do

Jackals, ibex, camel, gazelle, ant, grasshopper

The suffix -al

biolog^{ist}, journal^{ist}, pian^{ist}, scient^{ist}

She ~~enjoys~~ a bus.
I ~~like~~ fruits.

⇒ I **must** do my homework.
⇒ You **mustn't** walk on the grass.

Math
⇒ a pie chart

Writing Corner

Look and write a paragraph of **FIVE (5)** sentences.

النظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Tour guides

"tourists - know - friendly - welcoming"

Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. They need to know about many places. They need to be friendly. They must be welcoming so that the tourists have a good holiday. They like their jobs very much.



A job you want

"journalist - reports - reading - news - meeting"

When I'm older, I want to be a journalist because I like writing reports. I think this is a good job for me because I like reading lots of information. I'm good at reporting news and I enjoy meeting new people. I love this job. I want to be like my father.



A trip to Nubia

"family - train - tour guide - Abu Simbel - happy"

I went to Nubia. I went with my family. We went there by train. The tour guide showed us many places to visit. I visited Abu Simbel and the island of Philae. I enjoyed my time there. I was very happy.



Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	طبيب	.....	خباز
.....	جرفي	.....	فلاح - مزارع
.....	تاجر	.....	مدرس
.....	كاتب	.....	الكتابة المبروغرافية
.....	صياد سمك	.....	لوحة
.....	مصر القديمة	.....	معبد

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	النظام البيئي البحري	.....	ابن أوى "حيوان"
.....	النظام البيئي الصحراوي	.....	تيس الجبل - وعل
.....	النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة	.....	جمل
.....	النظام البيئي للبرك الصخرية	.....	غزال
.....	كاننات حية	.....	سلحفاة
.....	كاننات غير حية	.....	شجرة السنط

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	عالم آثار	.....	مدير
.....	السياحة	.....	طباخ - طاه
.....	فرس النهر	.....	مهندس معماري
.....	مرشد سياحي	.....	عامل بناء

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	نملة	.....	يطن
.....	جرادة	.....	ينط - يقفز
.....	نحلة	.....	فراشة

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	عملية جراحية	.....	العمل الجماعي
.....	يحل	.....	مريض
.....	زميل الفريق	.....	الريف
.....	حفلة موسيقية	.....	طبيب بيطري

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (5)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب () صح أو () خطأ.

- 1 Rana works with people.
- 2 Rana doesn't love her job.
- 3 She helps make animals better.
- 4 Rana doesn't work inside.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

flying - buzzing - shining - flowers

The sun is (1) and the gardens are full of (2) for the insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are (3) and the butterflies are (4).

The ants are working hard.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Mrs Soha works | a endangered species. |
| 2 Turtles are | b and water to survive. |
| 3 The river bank is | c in a school. |
| 4 Plants need sunlight | d a good place for birds. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Plants need sunlight and water to survive. Some plants need animals, birds, and insects to carry seeds to other areas so they can grow. They also need the right climate. Climate is also an important part of an ecosystem. Trees give us oxygen. This makes the air cleaner and allows plants, animals, and humans to live in a comfortable environment.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Trees give us (carbon dioxide - oxygen - smoke).
- 2 Climate is a/an (important - bad - hard) part of an ecosystem.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Why do plants need sunlight and water?

4 Do plants need the right climate?

5 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 (Nitrogen - Oxygen - Carbon) is a gas we breathe.
- 2 A (trader - teacher - doctor) works in a hospital.
- 3 Camels and gazelles live in a (marine - desert - saltwater) ecosystem.
- 4 She (eat - eats - eating) beans for breakfast every day.
- 5 He (isn't - don't - doesn't) sleep early.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.
اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

very - People - worked in hard - Ancient Egypt - .

two - borders - Egypt - seas .

are - important - ecosystems - Why ?

mustn't - You - on - grass - walk the .

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.
الظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

A job you want

Guiding words:

(doctor - helping - hard - sick)



ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

8 Punctuate the following.

⇒ ahmed works in a hospital in cairo

What's the weather like? ما حالة الطقس؟



In this unit, the student will...

- listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
يستمع ويفهم ويبحث ويكتب عن الطقس.
- read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
يقرأ ويستمع لقصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
- use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
يستخدم ظروف تكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط.
- understand a text about natural resources.
يفهم نصًا عن الموارد الطبيعية.
- understand a dialog about water pollution.
يفهم حوارًا عن تلوث المياه.
- learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
يتعلم التمييز بين الأصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.
- use measurements of length and weight.
يستخدم وحدات قياس الطول والوزن.
- write an account of extreme weather.
- research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.
يبحث ويكتب مطوية (نشرة) عن ما يجب فعله في الطقس القارس.

Lesson (1)

THE WEATHER

الطقس

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



cloud
سحابة



rain
مطر



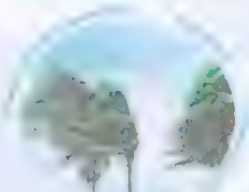
snow
جليد



rainbow
قوس قزح



storm
عاصفة



wind
رياح



sun
الشمس



ice
ثلج



windy
عاصف



rainy
ممطر



cloudy
غام



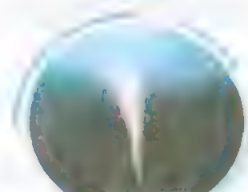
tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر



strong winds
رياح شديدة



sunny
مشمس



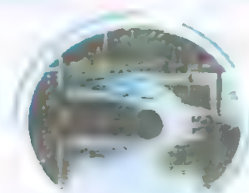
tornado
إعصار - زوبعة



heat wave
موجة حارة



sandstorm
عاصفة رملية



flood
فيضان

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

variety	تنوع	important	هام - مهم	store	متجر - محل
dry	جاف	everyone	الكل - الجميع	suddenly	فجأة
temperature	درجة الحرارة	south	جنوب	worried	قلق
cool	معتدل البرودة	shade	ظل	open	مفتوح
warm	دافئ	shady	ظليل	voice	صوت إنسان
about	تقريباً - حوالي	lemonade	عصير الليمون	floor	أرضية
degree	درجة مئوية	a cry	صرخة	special	خاص - مميز



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
pass	يمر - يجتاز	pass	passed
knock	يطرق الباب	knock	knocked
rain	يمطر	rain	rained
work	يعمل	work	worked
help	يساعد	help	helped
hear	يسمع	hear	heard
bring	يجلب - يحضر	bring	brought
become	يصبح	become	became
fall down	يسقط	fall down	fell down
keep	يظل - يحفظ	keep	kept



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the day	نهاراً	godown	يرتفع
at night	ليلاً	go high	مازاً بالعنازل
by the sea	بجانب البحر	past the houses	تدلاً
That's why...	لذلك...	keep cool	

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

The weather in Egypt

الطقس في مصر

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees.

لدينا طقس متنوع لطيف في مصر. على الرغم من أنه عادة حاف جدًا بلدنا فصول صيف شديدة الحرارة وتصل درجات الحرارة أحيانًا إلى 50 درجة في بعض الأماكن وفصول الشتاء عندنا أكثر برودة. ومن الممكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة إلى حوالي 12 درجة.



The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

الصحراء لها مناخ خاص جدًا. فهي شديدة الحرارة نهارًا وشديدة البرودة ليلاً عندما تصل الحرارة إلى درجة الصفر وهذا يعني أن الأشخاص الذين يعيشون في الصحراء يحاولون الحفاظ على البرودة نهارًا والدفء في الليل.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

لا تمطر كثيرًا في القاهرة - يوجد فقط حوالي 25 ملميمتر من الأمطار كل عام. إنه قليل جدًا مقارنة بلندن: فلندن تقدر أمطارها بـ 600 ملميمتر في العام. الآن يمكنك معرفة سبب أهمية النيل للجميع في مصر. إنه يجلب لنا الماء من جهة الجنوب. بالقرب من البحر، تمطر أكثر من ذلك بكثير - في الإسكندرية تقدر مياه الأمطار بحوالي ثمانية أضعاف ما بالقاهرة. ولذلك فهي خضراء جدًا.



Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1 Does Egypt have a variety of weather?

2 How much rain does London have?

Help your child read about the weather in Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الطقس في مصر.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

My heat wave story

قصتي عن موجة حارة

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

بح الصيف شديد الحرارة موجة حارة تحدث موجة الحر عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبير. فوق 40 درجة. ولا يستطيع أحد أن يفعل أي شيء. بقينا في الظل وحاولنا أن نشرب كثيرًا من الماء. طلبت أمي مني وأنا وصديقتي لمياء أن نذهب إلى المحل لشراء بطيخة. وعب. ولميون لعمل عصير لميون ليلطف من درجة حرارتنا. ذهبنا إلى المحل وعدنا من الجانب الظليل من الشارع. ومرورًا بكل منازل أصدقائنا.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!



ومحةً بينما كنا مارين بممرزل السيدة سهير. سمعنا صرخة. السيدة سهير سيدة عطوفة جدًا في السبعينات من عمرها وتعيس مع ابنها. ولكنه يذهب إلى العمل نهارًا أنا ولمياء كنا قلقتين وكان باب ويا السيدة سهير مفتوحًا قليلًا. لذلك طرطنا الباب ونادينا: "سيدة سهير!" في يادى الأمر لم يكن هناك رد ثم سمعنا صوتًا هادئًا "أنا هنا!" دخلنا إلى المطبخ وكانت على الأرض! قالت: "ساعدوني!" في يادى الأمر لم تكن نعرف ما نفعله. لكن بعد ذلك ركضت إلى خارج المنزل ورأيت السيد منيب. الذي يعمل في مكان قريب. ناديت عليه قائلة: "سيد منيب. من فضلك ساعد السيدة سهير!" جاء السيد منيب راضيًا. وساعدنا جميعًا في وضع السيدة سهير على كرسي. ثم أعطيناها كثيرًا من الماء وبعضًا من الفاكهة. قالت أنها ذهبت إلى المطبخ للحصول على الماء. لكنها شعرت بالمرض وسقطت لأن الجو كان حارًا جدًا. لم تستطع النهوض. كانت سعيدة جدًا أننا سمعناها. وكنا سعداء لأننا استطعنا مساعدتها.

Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1 What did the very hot summer become?

2 Where did the two girls find Mrs Sohair?

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 We don't have a variety of weather in Egypt.
- 2 Cairo has about 25mm of rain.
- 3 The desert has very cold days.
- 4 Egypt's weather is usually very dry.

2 Complete the dialog with words from the box.

أكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

stayed - season - hot - weather

- Ali: What was the (1) like last weekend?
 Omar: It was (2) and sunny.
 Ali: What did you do?
 Omar: I (3) at home.
 Ali: What's your favourite (4)?
 Omar: I like winter.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- 1 The desert has a) brings water from the south.
- 2 I went to the store b) favorite weather?
- 3 The Nile c) to buy some fruit.
- 4 What's your d) a very special climate.

1 - () 2 - () 3 - () 4 - ()

4 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Summer in Egypt is (windy - rainy - hot).
- 2 By the sea, it rains (many - little - a lot).
- 3 I (cooked - knocked - looked) on the door.
- 4 I can hear my brother's (voice - choice - sound).
- 5 We buy eggs and cheese (hospital - store - zoo).

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

- 1 stayed - shade - We - the - in - .
- 2 to - kitchen - She - water - the - went - to get - .
- 3 very - We - summers - have - hot - .
- 4 was - on - Mrs Sohair - lying - the floor - .

6 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

The weather in Egypt

Guiding words:

(hot - cooler - windy - dry - rain)



Lesson (2)

HOW OFTEN DO YOU ...?

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم مرة نقوم بالأشياء.

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائماً	عادة	غالباً	أحياناً	أبداً

The adverb of frequency comes before the main verb.

يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

- e.g. - I **always** go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
 - I **never** go to the park in the rain.
 - They come after (**am/is/are**).

e.g. I **am** always in bed at 11 pm.

تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد "am/is/are".

How often ... ? كم مرة ... ؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

How often + (اسم جمع / you / we / they) do +
 (المصدر) + inf. (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) does +

- e.g. - How often do you play tennis?
 - I **never** play tennis. I can't play!
 - I **always** play tennis on Saturdays.

Lesson 2

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1- Choose the correct word (s).

- How (many - often - much) do you visit your grandparents?
- (What - When - How) often do you go to the cinema?
- I (go often - often go - often goes) to the cinema on Fridays.
- I go to school by bus every day. I (always - never - often) go on foot.
- My father drives me to school three times a week. I (always - usually - sometimes) go by car.

2- Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- speak English - I - always - English class - in my - .
- meat - She - red - eats - never - .
- football - plays - He - with his friends - sometimes - .
- wake up - We - before 7 am - sometimes - .
- have - I - usually - a sandwich - lunch - for - .
- work - Ola - never - is - after - tired - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Activities

1 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 How (old - often - much) does she make dinner?
- 2 (Whose - Which - How) often do they watch TV?
- 3 I don't go to the park in the rain. I (never - always - sometimes) go there.
- 4 I (am always - always am - be always) in bed at 11 pm.
- 5 I play tennis on Saturdays. I (play never - play often - always play) on Saturdays.

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 How often do | a she watch TV? |
| 2 I usually do my | b you speak English? |
| 3 How often does | c on hot nights. |
| 4 I often sit by the sea | d homework in the evening. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 never - strawberries - I - eat - .
- 2 video - She - always - games - plays - night - at - .
- 3 get - How - does - late - often - she - up - ?
- 4 sometimes - a shower - I - have - morning - the - in - .

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

always - never - library - helps

Every week I go to the (1)..... I sometimes read a book there. The librarian (2)..... me. I (3)..... go with my friends. I (4)..... make noise there.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Every week, I go to the park. I always go there on Fridays. My father usually drives me there. My mother and my two sisters often go with us. We always sit under a tree to protect us from the sun. We never leave the park dirty.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We (always - never - sometimes) leave the park dirty.
- 2 I (sometimes - usually - always) go to the park on Fridays.

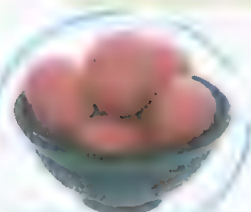
B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 Who often go with you?
- 2 Where do you always sit?

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

Natural resources from animals موارد طبيعية من الحيوانات



eggs
بيض

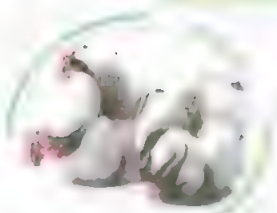


milk
لب

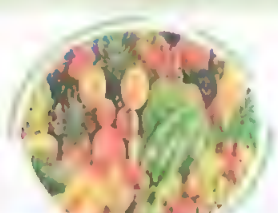


leather
جلد

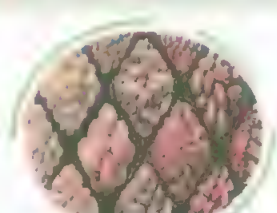
Natural resources from plants موارد طبيعية من النباتات



cotton
قطن



fruit
فاكهة



nuts
مكسرات



wood
خشب

Mineral resources موارد معدنية



silver
فضة



tin cans
علب صفيح



copper
نحاس

Extra Vocabulary

world	العالم	gas	غاز	pipes	انابيب - مواسير
amazing	مذهل	gold	معدن الذهب	jewelry	مجوهرات
living things	الكائنات الحية	zinc	معدن الزنك	nature	الطبيعة
energy	طاقة	tin	معدن القصدير	fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
goods	سلع	lead	معدن الرصاص	cooker	بوتجاز
crops	محاصيل زراعية	oil	النفط	fridge	ثلاجة
other	اخر - اخرى	coal	الفحم	countries	دول
economies	اقتصاديات	products	منتجات		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past
transport	transported
renew	renewed
survive	survived
stay	stayed

Irregular verbs

Present	Past
give	gave
build	built
sell	sold
buy	bought

Important expressions and prepositions

(be) called	يسمى / تسمى	sell	بيع
stay alive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	make furniture	يصنع الأثاث

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Natural Resources

موارد طبيعية

Our world is amazing. It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature gives us are called natural resources. We can use these to stay alive and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are **water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals like gold and copper.**

جيدة. بعض الأمثلة للموارد الطبيعية تتمثل في الماء و الهواء النقي و الحيوانات و الغابات و التربة الزراعية و الوقود الحفري مثل البترول والفحم. والمعادن مثل الذهب والنحاس.

Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things need it to stay alive. We use it to drink, to give to our animals, and to grow plants. We also use it for cleaning, for clean energy, and for transporting people and goods.

الماء هو الأكثر أهمية من بين كل الموارد الطبيعية لأن كل الكائنات الحية تحتاج إليه لتبقى على قيد الحياة. فلنحس نستخدمه لنشرب. ونقدمه إلى حيواناتنا. وفي زراعة النباتات. ونستخدمه أيضًا في أعمال النظافة. والحصول على طاقة نظيفة. ونقل الناس والبضائع.

Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy. We make furniture from trees. We grow food in the soil. Fossil fuels like oil, coal, and gas are also natural resources. They give us energy for our houses and fuel for our cars. But fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew them.

نستطيع تجديده.

Other natural resources are **minerals**, and these include gold, silver, tin, copper, lead, and zinc. We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry. We use the other minerals to make things like cell phones, pipes in our houses, cookers and fridges in our kitchens, computers, and cars.

الذهب والفضة لصنع المجوهرات الجميلة. ونستخدم المعادن الأخرى لصنع أشياء أخرى مثل الهواتف النقالة، المواسير في منازلنا و البوتجازات، والثلاجات في مطابخنا و أجهزة الكمبيوتر، والسيارات.

All these natural resources are important for our economies. We take the natural resources and use them to make new products. We then sell the products to other countries and buy things too.

كل هذه الموارد الطبيعية هامة لاقتصادياتنا. فنحن نأخذ الموارد الطبيعية ونستخدمها لصناعة منتجات جديدة. ثم نبيع هذه المنتجات إلى دول أخرى ونشتري أشياء أيضًا.

Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- Why is water the most important natural resource?
- What are the dangers of fossil fuels?





Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) false. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Natural resources are very important. ☐
- 2 Wood comes from minerals. ☐
- 3 We get our energy from fossil fuels. ☐
- 4 We don't need water at all. ☐

2 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Our world is amazing. It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature gives us are called natural resources. We can use these to stay alive and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals like gold and copper.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- 1 Gold is a (fossil fuel - plant - mineral).
 - 2 Our world is (amazing - bad - cruel).
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 3 Why do we use natural resources?

4 What are natural resources?

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| All natural resources are | a the soil. |
| We use the wood | b important for our economies. |
| We sell products | c to make furniture. |
| We grow food in | d to other countries. |
- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 We need water to (arrive - drive - survive)
- 2 We get energy from (fossil fuels - minerals - air)
- 3 Lead is a (mineral - jewelry - fossil fuel).
- 4 We can't (redo - renew - remake) fossil fuels.
- 5 We make (furniture - fridges - cookers) from wood.

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences. اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- 1 gives - many - Nature - us - things - .
- 2 from - We - furniture - make - trees - .
- 3 air - very - Clean is - important - .
- 4 gold - We - make - to - use - jewelry - .

6 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

النظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Natural resources

Guiding words:

(stay alive - minerals - water - wood - fossil fuels)



Lesson (4)

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

/p/



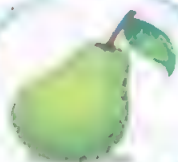
peach
خوخ



pull
يسحب - يجر



pea
بصلة



pear
كمثرى



beach
شاطئ



bull
ثور



bee
نحلة



bear
دب

/b/

Lesson 4

Silent letters

In English there are some words with **silent letters** - letters we don't pronounce.

بعض الحروف الموجودة في بعض الكلمات التي نراها بحروف صامتة (لا نلفظها)



clim**b**
يتسلق



tw**o**
اثنان



hou**r**
ساعة



is**l**and
جزيرة



kn**i**fe
سكين



wri**t**e
كتب



lam**b**
حمل - حروف صغير



wri**s**t
رأس



kn**e**e
ركبة



cas**t**le
قلعة



si**g**n
لافتة

Help your child identify silent letters in words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.

Help your child distinguish the / /and/ /sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يميز بين الصوتين / / / / .

Length الطول

We measure length in ...

kilometers (km)

meters (m)

centimeters (cm)

millimeters (mm)

نقيس الطول بـ ...

- الكيلومتر (كم)

- المتر (م)

- السنتيمتر (سم)

- المليمتر (مم)

Note:

1 m = 100 cm = 1,000 mm

1 cm = 10 mm

1 km = 1,000 m = 100,000 cm = 1,000,000 mm

Think and write.

فكر واكتب.

42,000 m = km

60 mm = cm

15 km = m

0.3 cm = mm

Weight الوزن

We measure weight in ...

- kilogram (kg)

- gram (g)

- milligram (mg)

1 g = 1,000 mg

1 kg = 1,000 g = 1,000,000 mg

نقيس الوزن بـ ...

- الكيلوجرام (كجم)

- الجرام (جم)

- المليلي جرام (مجم)

Think and write.

فكر واكتب.

1 7,3 kg = g

3 5 g = mg

2 2,200 g = kg

4 900 g = kg

Note:

للسؤال عن الطول نستخدم :

- How long?

- كم طول (أفقي)

- How tall?

- كم طول (رأسي)

- How high?

- كم ارتفاع

- How far?

- كم بُعد (المسافة)

للسؤال عن الوزن نستخدم :

- How heavy ...?

- كم وزن

How much weigh?

- كم وزن

Activities

1 Listen and circle the word you hear. استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها.

bee - pea beach - peach

bear - pear bull - pull

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

island - climbing - hours - knife - wrist

Ali was (1) on an (2) with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his (3). But he was very lucky. He had a (4) so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two (5) later, people came to save him!

3 Read and match. اقرأ وامل.

5,000 m = a 8,000 g
13 km = b 1,000 mg
1 g = c 5 km
8 kg = d 13,000 m

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

30,000 m = (32 - 31 - 30) km 10 km = (10,000 - 200 - 300) m
7 kg = (70 - 7,000 - 700) g 5 g = (1,000 - 3,000 - 5,000) mg
9,000 g = (9 - 5 - 7) kg 1 m = (100 - 1000 - 10) mm

5 Think and write.

8 kg = g 2,000 g = kg
3 g = mg 5,500 g = kg
6,5 kg = g

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5&6)

WRITING & PROJECT

Vocabulary

frightening	مرعب / مخيف	cool wind	رياح باردة
buildings	مباني	heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة
extreme weather	طقس شديد	floods	فيضان
air-conditioning	تكييف	lightning	برق
shade	ظل	electric wires	أسلاك الكهرباء
extreme heat	حرارة شديدة	candle	شمعة
extreme cold	برد شديد (قارس)	power cut	انقطاع الكهرباء
tornadoes	أعاصير - زوابع	leaflet	نشرة - مطوية
safe × unsafe	آمن × غير آمن	torch	كشاف
inside × outside	بالداخل × بالخارج	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
twist	يلتوي - يلوي	spend	يقتضي - يقضي
damage	يتلف	shut	يغلق
destroy	يدمر	hurt	يؤذي - يضر
twisted		spent	
damaged		shut	
destroyed		hurt	

Important expressions and prepositions

bits of houses	أجزاء من المنازل	get in	يدخل
find out	يكتشف/يعرف	turn off	يطفى
look out of	ينظر من		

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read about extreme weather in England.

اقرأ عن حالة الطقس الشديد (القارص) في لندن.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the storm and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. We could see it was moving slowly, and we could see it was damaging buildings. The next day, we found out that the storm hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

كنت في المدرسة مع زملاء فصلي. ثم بدأت تظلم. ذهبنا للخارج. فرأيت عاصفة وكان الأمر مخيفاً جداً. لقد كانت سحابة كبيرة، عريضة، سوداء. وعندما اقتربت منا، أصبحت أكبر والتفت. واستطعنا رؤية أشياء داخلها مثل أبواب وأجزاء من المنازل. وعندما اقتربت أصبحت أعرض وأكثر ظلاماً. ورأيناها تتحرك ببطء ورأيناها تدمر المنازل. وفي اليوم التالي اكتشفنا أن العاصفة أضرت بكثير من الأشخاص ودمرت العديد من المنازل والمباني.

Read about another extreme weather event.

اقرأ عن حالة طقس شديد أخرى.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins.

After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

ورأيت عاصفة رملية. وسرعان ما كان هناك الكثير من الرمال في الجو خارج السيارة وأصبح من الصعب الرؤية. أغلقنا كل النوافذ ولكن الظلام غطى كل شيء. وكان هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق وتساءلت هل سيضطدمون بنا؟ لقد كنت خائفاً للغاية. قام أبي بإبعاد السيارة عن الطريق وتوقفنا. ولم نرى أي سيارات أخرى على الطريق ولكن كانت العاصفة الرملية تتحرك ببطء شديد. ثم فجأة ابتعدت. ورأينا الشمس مرة أخرى وقدنا السيارة عبر الصحراء.

Keeping safe in extreme heat

الحفاظ على سلامتك في الحرارة الشديدة

- 1 Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning.
حاول قضاء وقت في المباني الباردة المزودة بتكييف.
- 2 Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.
اشرب كثيراً من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش.
- 3 Open the windows when there's a cool wind.
افتح النوافذ عند وجود هواء بارد.
- 4 Wear light, cool clothing.
ارتدي ملابس خفيفة فاتحة اللون.
- 5 Eat small, light meals.
تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.

Keeping safe in a sandstorm

الحفاظ على سلامتك في العاصفة الرملية

- 1 Cover your head and face as much as possible.
غط وجهك ورأسك بقدر المستطاع.
- 2 If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in.
إذا كنت في المنزل تأكد من أن النوافذ مغلقة حتى لا تدخل الرمال.
- 3 Wear a scarf to protect your face.
ارتدي وشاحاً لتحمي وجهك.
- 4 Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth.
ابق بالداخل حتى لا تدخل الرمال في فمك.
- 5 Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade.
لا تخرج. إذا كان يجب عليك الخروج، ابق في الظل.
- 6 If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car.
إذا كنت تقود، حاول أن تصل إلى جانب الطريق حتى توقف سيارتك.
- 7 Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.
قم بإطفاء التكييف حتى تمنع دخول الرمال.

Project

A leaflet نشرة / مطوية

How to keep safe in a storm

كيف تحافظ على سلامتك في عاصفة

What might happen in a storm?

ماذا يمكن أن يحدث خلال العاصفة؟

There might be very strong winds.

قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جداً.

There might be heavy rain and lightning.

قد تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.

It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall.

قد لا يكون الخروج آمناً للتحتمل سقوط الأسلاك الكهربائية.

There might be a power cut.

قد يحدث انقطاع للكهرباء.

People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

قد يحتاج الناس في الشوارع والمنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتك.



How can you protect yourself?

Stay inside and keep dry.

ابق بالداخل وحافظ على جفافك

Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut.

تأكد من وجود شموع وكشافات - فقد يحدث انقطاع للتيار

Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.

قم بالاتصال بعائلتك وأصدقائك للتحقق من سلامتهم

Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe.

لا تذهب لأي مكان بالقطار - يمكن أن يكون هذا غير آمن.

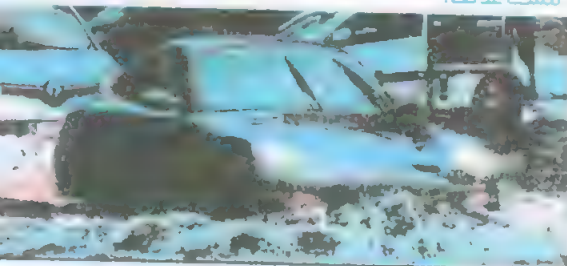
Help anyone who is afraid.

ساعد أي شخص يشعر بالخوف

Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.

لا تقف تحت الأشجار في حالة حدوث برق.

Don't stand near wires - they could fall and give you an electric shock.



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

wind - drink - shade - thirsty

In extreme heat you should (1) lots of water, even if you don't feel (2). Open the windows when there's a cool (3). Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the (4).

2 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

Wear a (shirt - scarf - shirt) to protect your face.

In extreme heat, you should wear (heavy - strong - light) cool clothing.

In a sandstorm, stay (inside - outside - side) so the sand can't get in your mouth.

Turn (on - in - off) air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

How do you keep

a who is afraid.

Eat small

b with my classmates.

Help anyone

c safe in a storm?

I was at school

d light meals.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were no other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, and the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

5 Choose the correct answer.

We were driving to visit my (uncles - cousins - aunts).

We saw the (sun - moon - star) again and drove through the desert.

Answer the following questions.

What happened while they were driving?

Did they see any more cars on the road?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Guiding words: keeping safe in extreme heat

(drink - open - cool - wear - clothing)



Review on Unit (6)



cloud



ice



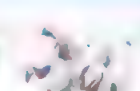
rain



rainbow



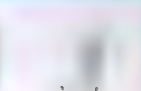
wood



cotton



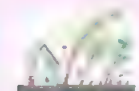
nuts



milk



sunny



windy



snow



cloudy



copper



tin cans



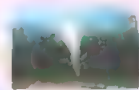
silver



eggs



rainy



tornado



storm



mineral



lead



zinc



fruit



sandstorm



tidal wave



leather

What's
the
weather
like?

/p/

pull pear peach pea

/b/

bull bear beach bee

Silent letters

climb island two
knife hour write

Frequency adverbs

always	100%
usually	80%
often	70%
sometimes	50%
never	0%

How often do you ... ?

- I often sit on our balcony on hot nights.
- I'm always in bed at 11 pm

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **FIVE (5)** sentences.

اكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

The weather in Egypt.

"variety - hot - temperature - desert"

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. Although it is usually very dry, we have hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees in some places. Our winters are cooler. The desert is very hot in the day and very cold at night.

Natural Resources

"amazing - water - alive - minerals"

We use natural resources every day in our lives. We can use them to stay alive and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals like gold and copper. Water is the most important natural resource as we need it to survive.

Keeping safe in a storm

"cover - windows - go out - stand - wires"

To keep safe in a storm, you must cover your head and face. If you are at home, shut all the windows so no sand can get in. Stay inside and don't go out. If you must go out, stay in the shade. You mustn't stand under trees or near electric wires.

Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	غائم	.....	طقس
.....	ثلج	.....	درجة حرارة
.....	ممطر	.....	موجة حرارة
.....	قوس قزح	.....	صحراء
.....	رياح	.....	فيضان
.....	عاصف	.....	مناخ
.....	شمس	.....	عاصفة رملية

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	دائمًا	.....	ألعاب فيديو
.....	أحيانًا	.....	يساعد
.....	غالبًا	.....	أبدًا
.....	حصة	.....	يلعب تنس

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	موارد طبيعية	.....	نحاس
.....	يبقى حيًا	.....	يجدد
.....	معادن	.....	وقود حفري
.....	الزئبق	.....	علبة صفيح

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	كمثرى	.....	جزيرة
.....	شاطئ	.....	سكينة
.....	خوف	.....	يتسلق

Lesson (5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	زملاء الفصل	.....	كشف
.....	انقطاع الكهرباء	.....	وجبات

Activities on Unit (6)

1 Listen and write True (T) or False (F). استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 A heat wave is when the temperature goes very low.
- 2 The very hot summer becomes a heat wave.
- 3 We came back in the shady side of the street.
- 4 We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

alive - amazing - resources - nature

Our world is (1) . It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes and build our houses. The things (2) gives us are called natural (3) . We can use these to stay (4) and keep healthy.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 What was the weather | a to grow vegetables. |
| 2 The things nature gives us | b important of all natural resources. |
| 3 Water is the most | c like last weekend? |
| 4 We use soil | d are called natural resources. |
- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Unit (6) - What's the weather like?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We have very (cool - cold - hot) summer.
- 2 The temperature sometimes goes to (30 - 20 - 50) degrees in some places.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What is the weather like in the desert?
- 4 Does the desert have a special climate?

5 Choose the correct word(s).

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 She never (eat - eats - eating) red meat.
- 2 The things nature gives us are called natural (sources - forces - resources).
- 3 32.000 m = (30 - 32 - 31) km
- 4 I (go always - always go - always goes) to the club on sunny Sundays.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

اقرأ وأعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة.

1 often - go - I - the - to - cinema - .

2 hot - was - It - sunny - and - weekend - last - .

3 you - often - How - do - tennis - play - ?

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences.

انظر واكتب فقرة من 5 جمل.

Water

Guiding words:

(important - resources - alive - drink - plants - cleaning)



8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

omar stayed at home last weekend

Review 2

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a **moral**. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: **Be kind and patient with people**.



كان إيسوب كاتباً مشهوراً في اليونان القديمة. كتب قصصاً تسمى (خرافات إيسوب). كانت تحتوي دائماً على درس أخلاقي. هذا الدرس الأخلاقي يعلمنا أن نكون طيبين ومتعاونين مع الآخرين. مثال للدرس الأخلاقي: كن طيباً (عطوفاً) وصبوراً مع الناس.

Read the fable.

اقرأ الأسطورة.

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

كان "رياح الشمال" يحاول أن يجعل "الشمس" غاضبة. وقال: "أنا قوي جداً - أنا أقوى منك". نظر لأسفل وهب الريح وأسقط بعض الأشجار في الطريق. ردّت "الشمس" مبتسمة أنا لست متأكداً أنك أقوى مني.

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

في تلك اللحظة كان رجلاً يرتدي معطفاً يمشي على امتداد الطريق. قالت الشمس للريح: "وهو كذلك، دعنا نرى. من يستطيع أن يجعل الرجل يخلع معطفه؟" قال الريح "همم بالطبع أنا سأفوز". نظر لأسفل على المسافر ثم هب وهب. شعر الرجل بالريح وشعر بالبرد. وشد معطفه بشدة حوله. لم يسمح للرياح أن تعصف بمعطفه. كان الريح غاضباً ولكنه تعب وتوقف.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!" He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said. The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!

ثم خرجت "الشمس" وبدأت تسطع قال الرجل «يا الهي» «الجو حار جداً» وشعر بالحر الشديد و خلع معطفه ثم قال «هذا أفضل». نظرت "الشمس" لرياح الشمال وقالت لقد فزت. كان ريح الشمال غاضباً وهب بعيداً!!

Project 1

Climate change and how it affects Egypt

تغير المناخ وكيف يؤثر على مصر

What is climate change?



This is a glacier melting



a drought



a flood

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.

تغير المناخ يعني كيف نغير الطقس بالتلوث. ترتفع الحرارة وتذوب جبال الجليد. وهذا يعني أن منسوب المياه في البحر يرتفع أيضاً. عندما يرتفع منسوب البحر، يحدث الفيضانات وعندما ترتفع الحرارة يحدث الجفاف لأن المياه تتبخر.

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below.



soil-less agriculture in Egypt

In this way, you grow plants without using soil. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.

قد يتسبب تغير المناخ في مشاكل للزراعة. فقد لا يكون هناك مياه كافية لزراعة المحاصيل. أحد الحلول لمشكلة الجفاف هو أن نستخدم الزراعة بدون التربة. انظر للصورة أدناه: بهذه الطريقة أنت تزرع النباتات بدون التربة. المحاصيل على الكمية المناسبة للماء والمواد المغذية في الصوبات الزراعية المخصصة. وبذلك يمكنك توفير الماء والوقت.



Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

My favourite food is chocolate. But it is unhealthy to eat a lot. So I eat a little. My friend Farida likes chicken and fish. She has a mango tree in her garden.

Lesson (2)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Food chain shows home plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. These are called producers. They get their energy from the sun. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.

Activities On Unit (1)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes such as koshari and hummus. Chickpeas aren't or a vegetable. They belong to a group of foods called legumes. Other legumes are lentils and peanuts.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Anas and Seif are talking about sports. Anas loves squash. Seif is good at playing tennis, but he's bad at playing handball. Anas is bad at playing tennis but he loves football. They want to go to the club and play a game of football.

Lesson (2)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Hi!, I'm Heba. I'm good at writing poems. I'm bad at playing chess. My brother Ali is great at playing football. He is bad at drawing. My mother is good at making cakes. My father is good at reading Arabic.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Players play football on a football pitch. Players wear football boots to play football. Football is the most popular sport in Egypt. Karate is a good sport. When you do karate you wear a white suit.

Activities On Unit (2)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

I play football on a football pitch. I wear football boots. When I do karate, I wear a karate suit. I go swimming in a swimming pool. I wear goggles. I play tennis on a tennis court. I play squash with a racket.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas. Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella. Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.

Lesson (2)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. About 20 kilometres north of Cairo. The Nile River spreads out into two branches. These two branches flow toward the Mediterranean sea. The Nile Delta is the fertile soil between the two branches of the Nile. It stretches from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a triangle.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two pockets. Reem is wearing a costume. She looks like a princess! She has a crown on her head. She has white gloves on her hands.

Activities On Unit (3).

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Omar lives in Sohag. It's usually very hot there. He wears shorts and a T-shirt. Many men wear the galabeya. It's a long white robe. It has long sleeves. It has pockets but they're hidden. You can't see them.

Review On Units (1-3)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

Unit (4)

Lesson (2)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Scientists think that people are causing climate change -a change to the normal weather of the Earth over a long period of time. We produce too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation, building things, and livestock farming. The greenhouse gases now keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth, and stop this heat from going back to the space. So the Earth's temperature goes up.

Lessons (5&6)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

Activities On Unit (4)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. It's a beautiful and calm place. There are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. You can see the Aswan Museum and the tombs of Nobles. What a fantastic place!

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Egyptian farmers grew vegetables. They raised chickens to get eggs and meat. Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread and make sandals. They could even become Pharaohs.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. They need to know about the places that tourists want to visit, but they also need to be friendly and welcoming so that the tourists have a good holiday.

Activities On Unit (5)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and cooler winters. The desert has very hot days and very cold nights, it doesn't rain a lot in Cairo. Cairo has about 25 mm of rain every year. By the sea in

Alexandria it rains a lot.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

We use natural resources every day in our lives. The most important natural resource is water as we need it to survive. Clean air is also very important. We use the wood from trees to make our furniture and houses. And we get our energy from fossil fuels.

Lesson (4)

Listen and circle the word you hear.

- 1- bee
- 2- peach
- 3- bear
- 4- pull

Activities On Unit (6)

Listen and write True (T) or False (F).

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.